



GENERALISATIONS OF MINKOWSKI'S

THEOREM IN THE PLANE

by

John Robert Arkininstall

A thesis presented for the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy at the University of Adelaide  
Adelaide, South Australia.

January 1982

For my late friend Simeon,

"G'Bye Boo".

The results presented in this thesis are my own except where due acknowledgement is given in the text.

John R. Arkinstall

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I wish to thank my supervisor, Dr. Paul R. Scott, for his guidance, helpful suggestions and patience. I also wish to thank colleagues and friends at the University of Adelaide, particularly Dr. Rey Casse, Mr. Michael McAuley, Mr. Andrew Eberhard and Mr. John Boland for their advice, criticism and comraderie.

I specially wish to thank Ms. Elizabeth Henderson, for her painstaking typing of this thesis. Finally, thanks to my parents for their support and enthusiasm over the years.

CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
ABSTRACT	(vi)
0. PRELIMINARIES	1.
0.1 Introduction	1.
0.2 Basic Definitions	5.
1. MINKOWSKI'S THEOREM AND ITS GENERALISATIONS	7.
1.1 Statements of Minkowski's Theorem	7.
1.2 Generalisations in $E^2$ by Ehrhart and Scott	8.
1.3 A boundedness result from Minkowski's Theorem	16.
1.4 Lattice polygon results	17.
1.5 Blaschke Selection Theorem	18.
1.6 Results on the perimeter of a convex set	18.
2. MINKOWSKI'S THEOREM WITH PERIMETER CONSTRAINTS	20.
2.1 Introduction and Statement of Results	20.
2.2 An Application of Steiner Symmetrisation	21.
2.3 Hexagons which have area 4.	23.
2.4 Extreme sets are symmetric in $y = \pm x$	23.
2.5 Extreme sets are rounded polygons	24.
2.6 Rounded hexagon or parallelogram?	25.
2.7 Determination of rounded polygon $H(\psi)$ or $L(\psi)$ from $P$	27.
2.8 Determination of $A_p(S)$ for $P > 4 + \pi$	29.
2.9 A related problem	31.
2.10 Conjectured analogue of Theorem 2.1.1 for a general planar lattice	32.
3. MINKOWSKI'S THEOREM WITH RELAXED SYMMETRY CONDITIONS	35.
3.1 Introduction and Statement of Results	35.
3.2 Proof of Theorem 3.1.1	36.

3.3	Proof of Theorem 3.1.2	38.
3.4	Polygons and lattice points	39.
3.5	An analytical result	42.
3.6	Proof of Theorem 3.1.3	45.
3.7	Boundary lattice points	50.
3.8	Incentre, circumcentre results	52.
4.	MINKOWSKI'S THEOREM WITH OTHER MEASURES OF SYMMETRY	58.
4.1	Introduction and Statement of Results	58.
4.2	Area symmetry	62.
4.3	Midchord symmetry	64.
4.4	Reflection/rotation symmetry	66.
4.5	Perimeter symmetry	67.
5.	THE MINKOWSKI-VAN DER CORPUT THEOREM WITH RELAXED SYMMETRY CONDITIONS	71.
5.1	Introduction and statement of results	71.
5.2	Proof of Theorem 5.1.1	72.
5.3	Preliminary results needed in the proof of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3	74.
5.4	A reduction to $t$ -admissible polygons of a special type	87.
5.5	An analogue to the Minkowski-Van der Corput Theorem for a class of polygons	100.
5.6	Completion of the proof of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3	147.
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	149.

ABSTRACT

Several Generalisations of Minkowski's Convex Body Theorem, in the Euclidean Plane, are obtained. In the first, the perimeter of an 0-symmetric convex set containing no interior lattice points besides 0 is used as an additional parameter in bounding the area of the set. Secondly, the number of chords of a convex set bisected by 0 is introduced as a measure of symmetry of the set about 0. With this measure of symmetry, a simultaneous generalisation of both Minkowski's Theorem and Ehrhart's Theorem is obtained. Similar generalisations are shown for a number of related symmetry conditions. Finally, the same symmetry measure is used to extend the Minkowski-Van der Corput Theorem in the plane, for sets containing at most four interior lattice points.

0. PRELIMINARIES0.1 Introduction

A great deal of work has been done, by various authors, in the search for extensions of Minkowski's convex body theorem, and in the general area of convex bodies and lattice points. The only results of other authors which appear in this thesis are those for which I have particular application. These results form the principal content of Chapter 1. I have made no attempt to give a general survey of all known results which extend Minkowski's theorem. To justify this omission I first note that a number of good surveys have recently been published, for example:

J. Hammer: Unsolved Problems Concerning Lattice Points, Research Notes in Mathematics. No. 15, London, Pitman, 1977.

Peter M. Gruber: Geometry of Numbers, Contributions to Geometry: Proceedings of the Geometry Symposium in Siegen 1978, Birkhäuser Verlag Basel 1979 pp. 186-224.

I secondly note that the type of result I have found of most use often has little directly to do with Minkowski's Convex Body Theorem, but is simply a result of the Euclidean plane. To attempt to supply an exhaustive list of recent results in so general an area would clearly be an enormous task largely irrelevant to the exposition of this thesis.

In Chapter 2, we consider the following type of set. Let  $K$  be a convex body in the Euclidean plane which is centrally symmetric about  $0$ , the only point of the integer lattice in its interior. Minkowski's Theorem asserts that the area of  $K$ ,  $A(K)$  is at most four. We consider the perimeter  $P = P(K)$  of such a

set  $K$  as an additional parameter. A tighter bound than four is deduced for  $A(K)$ , in terms of  $P$  for those values of  $P$  up to a certain value. The result is best possible, as for each value of  $P$  we exhibit a set whose area is this tighter bound.

This work was motivated by a conjecture of my supervisor, Dr. P. Scott [11], and I received a good deal of initial assistance from him. The principal results of Chapter 2 have been published in the following article, with P. Scott as co-author

An Isoperimetric Problem with Lattice Point Constraints,

Journal of the Australian Math. Soc. Ser. A, 27(1979), 27-36.

Simultaneous with the publication of this work, H.T. Croft [4], published an article which also confirmed Scott's conjecture [11]. The articles by myself and Croft are similar in many respects. However, neither yields a method which can be applied to the same problem for a general 2-dimensional lattice, nor in higher dimensions. For a general 2-dimensional lattice, I have been able by geometrical methods, as opposed to the analytic methods of Chapter 2, to obtain partial results, alluded to in Conjecture 2.10.1. However, even the simplest 3-dimensional problem, with a cubic lattice in  $E^3$ , presents an intractable problem, as little is known of the surfaces involved in extreme cases, other than that they have constant mean curvature.

In Chapter 3, we introduce a measure of symmetry of a convex set  $K$  which contains  $O$  as an interior point. We let  $s(K)$  be the number of chords of  $K$  through  $O$  which are bisected by  $O$ . Heuristically, a large value of  $s(K)$  indicates that either  $K$  is roughly centrally symmetric (if the chords involved are evenly spread about) or that  $K$  has a roughly symmetric section of boundary (if the chords involved are clustered). We show that

if  $0$  is the only lattice point in the interior of  $K$ , and if  $s(K) \geq 2$ , then the area of  $K$  is bounded. Specifically, if  $s(K) = 2$  or  $s(K) \geq 4$ , then  $A(K) \leq 4$ , while if  $s(K) = 3$  then  $A(K) \leq 4\frac{1}{2}$ .

The principal results of Chapter 3 appear in print in the following article:

Minimal Conditions for Minkowski's Theorem in the Plane I,  
 Bulletin of the Australian Mathematical Society (22)  
 1980, 259-274.

In Chapter 4, we introduce a number of measures of symmetry which we show are related to  $s(K)$ . These measures of symmetry are the number of chords of  $K$  through  $0$  which partition evenly the area of  $K$ , the perimeter of  $K$ , the number of chords through  $0$  midway between parallel supporting lines of  $K$  (midchords), the number of reflection axes of  $K$  through  $0$ , and the number of rotation symmetries of  $K$ . For each of these measures, results similar to the results of Chapter 3 are proved, although with perimeter symmetry our proof requires an extra condition. Most results from this chapter have appeared in part II of the article above, in the same volume, pages 275-284.

In Chapter 5, we generalise the Minkowski-Van der Corput Theorem. In the plane this result states that a convex set  $K$  which is centrally symmetric about  $0$  and which contains in its interior  $t$  (necessarily  $t$  is even) integer lattice points besides  $0$ , has area at most  $2(t+2)$ . We again use the measure of symmetry  $s(K)$  for a convex set  $K$  containing  $0$  as an interior point and  $t$  other points of the integer lattice besides  $0$  in its interior, where  $t \leq 3$ . We show that if  $s(K) = 2$  or  $s(K) \geq 4$  then  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$  and that if  $s(K) = 3$  then

$$A(K) \leq 2(t+2) + (2(t+1))^{-1}.$$

The methods employed in this chapter form a natural extension of methods developed in Chapter 3. Unfortunately, many of the results needed in this extension are proved in a manner which is less than elegant. While the arguments in this section on paper appear to be no more than endless casesplitting and argument by contradiction, when translated to sketches of the lattice polygons concerned they are very simple. It is my belief that the restriction  $t \leq 3$  is spurious to the main result of this chapter. Confirmation of this belief will no doubt require a significant improvement upon the methods I have used in section 5.5.

In each of Chapters 3, 4 and 5, the proof techniques used employ a number of results which are peculiar to the plane and not to higher dimensional spaces. For this reason, I have made no effort to suggest higher dimensional analogues for either the symmetry measure  $s(K)$  or for the results involving this measure of symmetry. That is not to say that I disbelieve that such analogues exist. However, given the historical resistance to proof of some conjectures, for example the conjectured extensions of Ehrharts Theorem to higher dimensions, I consider it imprudent to propose conjectures in this area.

## 0.2 Basic Definitions

In order to avoid any possible confusion of ideas, we give in this section some basic definitions, and an indication of the significance of some of the properties of the terms defined. All the following terms are set in Euclidean  $n$ -space,  $E^n$ .

A convex set is a subset of  $E^n$  which contains all points of all segments with endpoints belonging to the set.

We say a set  $K$  is centrally symmetric about the point  $A$  if whenever  $x \in K$  then  $2A - x \in K$ . In particular  $K$  is symmetric about the origin  $0$ , or is  $0$ -symmetric, exactly when  $x \in K$  implies  $-x \in K$ .

The integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$  is the set of points of  $E^n$  all of whose coordinates are integers. In particular  $\Lambda_0$  is a discrete subgroup of the additive group  $E^n$ , and we define a general lattice  $\Lambda$  in  $E^n$  to be any such discrete subgroup of  $E^n$ , with rank  $n$ . It is readily shown that any lattice  $\Lambda$  is an image of  $\Lambda_0$  under a nonsingular linear transformation, and that the determinants of all such transforms from  $\Lambda_0$  to  $\Lambda$  have the same modulus.

This is called the determinant of the lattice  $\Lambda$ ,  $\det(\Lambda)$ , and clearly measures the volume (area) of a fundamental cell of the lattice  $\Lambda$ , the image of the unit volume with vertex  $0$  and adjacent edges of unit length along the coordinate axes. As the affine transformations of  $E^n$  form a group, many results in this thesis which can be expressed in terms invariant under the group can then be applied to any lattice.

In particular  $A(K)/\det(\Lambda)$  and the ratio in which a line segment is divided by a point are invariant when an affine transformation is applied to map a set  $K$  and lattice  $\Lambda$  to a new set and lattice. This result is employed often in the text, particularly throughout Chapters 3, 4 and 5, to claim that results hold generally, for all planar lattices.

A second important group of transformations is the group of integral unimodular transformations, affine transformations whose

determinant is  $\pm 1$ , whose coefficients are integral, and whose translation component is integral. This group has the important property of being the automorphism group of the integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$ . In many instances, when proving results about the integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$ , we employ the group of integral unimodular transformations to make simplifying assumptions about the properties being demonstrated. This is particularly so in section 5.5.

Many further terms, and particularly geometric properties of convex bodies in Euclidean spaces, are employed in the text. We introduce these terms in the body of the text as needed.

## CHAPTER 1

Minkowski's Theorem and its Generalisations1.1 Statements of Minkowski's Theorem

The following six results are each statements of the Fundamental Theorem of Minkowski, (1896) [9], the last three as generalised by Van der Corput, (1935) [3]. We give these six forms for ease of later reference.

Theorem 1.1.1 (Minkowski): A bounded 0-symmetric convex body in  $E^n$  with volume  $V(K) > 2^n \det(\Lambda)$  contains at least one point  $u \neq 0$  of the lattice  $\Lambda$ .

Theorem 1.1.2 (Minkowski): A compact 0-symmetric convex body in  $E^n$  with volume  $V(K) \geq 2^n \det(\Lambda)$  contains at least one point  $u \neq 0$  of the lattice  $\Lambda$ .

Theorem 1.1.3 (Minkowski): A compact 0-symmetric convex body in  $E^n$  containing no nonzero point of the lattice  $\Lambda$  in its interior, has volume  $V(K) \leq 2^n \det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 1.1.4 (Minkowski-van der Corput): Let  $K$  be a bounded 0-symmetric convex body in  $E^n$  of volume  $V(K) > 2^n k \det(\Lambda)$ , where  $k$  is a positive integer. Then  $K$  contains at least  $k$  pairs of points  $\pm u^i \neq 0$  of the lattice  $\Lambda$ .

Theorem 1.1.5 (Minkowski-van der Corput): Let  $K$  be a compact 0-symmetric convex body in  $E^n$  with volume  $V(K) \geq 2^n k \det(\Lambda)$ , where  $k$  is a positive integer. Then  $K$  contains at least  $k$  pairs of points  $\pm u^i \neq 0$  of the lattice  $\Lambda$ .

Theorem 1.1.6 (Minkowski-van der Corput): Let  $m$  be a positive integer. Let  $K$  be a bounded 0-symmetric convex body containing just  $m$  points of the lattice  $\Lambda$  (including 0). Then

$$V(K) \leq 2^n \left(\frac{m+1}{2}\right) \det(\Lambda).$$

Theorems 1.1.1, 1.1.2 and 1.1.3 are simply special cases of Theorems 1.1.4, 1.1.5 and 1.1.6 corresponding to  $k=m=1$ . Theorem 1.1.6 is simply the contrapositive statement to Theorem 1.1.4 taking  $m = 2k-1$ . A proof of Theorems 1.1.4 and 1.1.5 can be found in Lekkerkerker [8] p. 44.

## 1.2 Generalisations in $E^2$ by Ehrhart and Scott

We now give some generalisations to Minkowski's Theorem, due to Ehrhart and Scott.

Theorem 1.2.1 (Ehrhart, [6]): A bounded convex body in  $E^2$  with area  $A(K) > 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$  and with centre of gravity 0, contains at least two points of the lattice besides 0.

Since a later result, Theorem 3.1.2, generalises Ehrhart's result, and employs a lemma due to Ehrhart used by him in the proof of Theorem 1.2.1, we sketch Ehrhart's proof. We give firstly results needed for this proof.

Theorem 1.2.2 (Winternitz): If a bounded convex figure in  $E^2$  is divided into two parts by a line  $\ell$  through its centre of gravity  $G$ , then the ratio of the areas of the two parts always lies between the bounds  $4/5$  and  $5/4$ .

Proof. A proof of this result can be found in Yaglom and Boltyanski [17], section 3.10.

Lemma 1.2.3 (Ehrhart): A bounded convex set  $K$  has at least three chords through its centre of gravity  $G$  which are bisected by  $G$ .

Proof. See Ehrhart [6].

The following result of Ehrhart [6] is used in section 3.3, and forms an essential part of the proof given there. Since the proof given in [6] is brief, and takes as read several subcases, we give a proof. This gives us an opportunity to introduce the function  $d(\theta)$ , much use of which is made in Chapters 3, 4 and 5.

Lemma 1.2.4 (Ehrhart): Let  $K$  be a bounded convex set in  $E^2$  which has at least three chords bisected by a common point  $O$ . Then  $K$  has three such chords which can be labelled successively  $\vec{AB}$ ,  $A'\vec{B}'$  and  $A''\vec{B}''$  so that the semitangents to the right at the endpoints of  $\vec{AB}$ , to the left at the endpoints of  $A'\vec{B}'$  and to the right at the endpoints of  $A''\vec{B}''$ , meet or are parallel.

Proof. If all the chords of  $K$  through  $O$  have  $O$  as midpoint, then  $K$  is  $O$ -symmetric, and so all the respective pairs of semitangents either side of any chord through  $O$  meet or are parallel. The result is then, in this case, trivially true. Hence, with no loss of generality, we choose an axis  $\vec{OX}$  such that the chord  $K \cap \vec{OX}$  is not bisected by  $O$ . We define the function  $d(\theta)$ , for  $\theta \in [0, \pi]$ , to be the difference of squared lengths  $|BO|^2 - |OA|^2$ , where the chord of  $K$ ,  $A\vec{O}\vec{B} = c(\theta)$  makes an angle  $\theta$  with  $\vec{OX}$ . Indeed we choose to orient  $\vec{OX}$  in such a way that  $d(0) < 0$ . The function  $d(\theta)$  is continuous on  $[0, \pi]$ , and clearly  $d(0) + d(\pi) = 0$ . The function  $d(\theta)$  has at least three zeros on  $(0, \pi)$ , as  $d(0) \neq 0$  and since  $d(\theta) = 0$  if and only if  $c(\theta)$  has midpoint  $O$ .

If  $d(\theta) = 0$  for all  $\theta$  in the interval  $(\theta_1, \theta_2) \subset (0, \pi)$ , then the convex hull  $K'$  of the chords  $c(\theta)$ ,  $\theta \in (\theta_1, \theta_2)$  is a centrally symmetric set. By our first remark above, all the semitangent pairs (to  $K'$ ) at the endpoints of  $c(\theta)$ ,  $\theta \in (\theta_1, \theta_2)$  meet or are parallel. As a semitangent at these points to  $K'$  is also a semitangent to  $K$ , the result is proved in this case also. We therefore assume that in any subinterval of  $(0, \pi)$  there is a value of  $\theta$  for which  $d(\theta) \neq 0$ .

As  $d(\theta)$  is continuous on  $[0, \pi]$ , and  $d(0) < 0$ ,  $d(\pi) > 0$ , the value

$$\theta_1 = \sup\{x/d(\theta) \leq 0 \quad \forall \theta \in (0, x)\}$$

is a zero of  $d(\theta)$ , distinct from both 0 and  $\pi$ . Further,  $d(\theta) > 0$  for all values of  $\theta$  sufficiently close to but greater than  $\theta_1$ , and so  $d(\theta)$  is increasing at  $\theta_1$ .

If  $d(\theta) \geq 0$  for all  $\theta \in (\theta_1, \pi)$ , then the remaining zeros of  $d(\theta)$ , there are at least two, all correspond to extrema of  $d(\theta)$ . Otherwise, we let

$$\theta_2 = \sup\{x/d(\theta) \geq 0, \quad \forall \theta \in (\theta_1, x)\}$$

which exists since  $d(\theta) < 0$  for some  $\theta \in (\theta_1, \pi)$ , and which is clearly less than  $\pi$  as  $d(\pi) > 0$ . Clearly  $d(\theta)$  is decreasing at  $\theta_2$ . Similarly,

$$\theta_3 = \sup\{x/d(\theta) \leq 0, \quad \forall \theta \in (\theta_2, x)\}$$

exists, is distinct from both  $\theta_2$  and  $\pi$ , and  $d(\theta)$  is increasing at  $\theta_3$ .

Hence we have shown that either  $d(\theta)$  has three zeros at which  $d(\theta)$  is successively increasing, decreasing and increasing, or  $d(\theta)$

has, besides  $\theta_1$ , a zero at which  $d(\theta)$  is increasing, at least two zeros at which  $d(\theta)$  is an extremum. We now show that the behaviour of  $d(\theta)$  at its zeros determines the properties of the semitangents at the endpoints of  $c(\theta)$ .

We first suppose that  $\theta_4$  is a zero of  $d(\theta)$  at which  $d(\theta)$  is a local extremum. Let  $\bar{K}$  denote the reflection of  $K$  in  $O$ . Since  $d(\theta)$  is an extremum at  $\theta_4$ , at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_4)$  the boundaries of  $K$  and  $\bar{K}$  touch internally, and so  $K$  and  $\bar{K}$  share a supporting line  $l$  at one of these endpoints. The lines  $l$  and  $\bar{l}$ , the reflection of  $l$  in  $O$ , are parallel supporting lines to  $K$  at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_4)$ . Therefore the semitangents to  $K$  at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_4)$ , on either side of  $c(\theta_4)$ , either meet or are parallel.

We next suppose that  $\theta_5$  is a zero of  $d(\theta)$  at which  $d(\theta)$  is increasing. In this case the boundaries of  $K$  and  $\bar{K}$  cross at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_5)$ . If  $\theta^-$  is just smaller than  $\theta_5$ ,  $d(\theta)$  is nonpositive and so the endpoint  $B^-$  of  $c(\theta)$  is no further from  $O$  than endpoint  $A^-$ . If  $\theta^+$  is just greater than  $\theta_5$ , the opposite occurs. As the intersection of sets  $K$  and  $\bar{K}$  is convex at  $B$ , the angle formed by the left semitangent  $t_1$  to  $\bar{K}$  at  $B$  and the right semitangent  $t_2$  to  $K$  at  $B$  is no larger than  $\pi$ . We note that left and right are as seen from the direction of the chord  $\vec{AOB} = c(\theta_5)$ . Hence  $\bar{t}_1$ , the reflection of  $t_1$  in  $O$ , is the right semitangent to  $K$  at  $A$ , and  $\bar{t}_1$  meets or is parallel to  $t_2$ . Similarly, a zero  $\theta_6$  of  $d(\theta)$  at which  $d(\theta)$  is decreasing corresponds to a chord  $c(\theta_6)$  at whose endpoints the semitangents to the left meet or are parallel.

If  $\theta_1$ ,  $\theta_2$  and  $\theta_3$  are zeros of  $d(\theta)$  at which  $d(\theta)$  is successively increasing, decreasing and increasing, we deduce the

result by the above. Otherwise, we have shown that  $d(\theta)$  is increasing at  $\theta_1$  and an extremum at at least two other zeros. Since the semitangents to either side at these other zeros meet or are parallel, we have no difficulty labelling the chords as required by the statement of the lemma.

We are now in a position to prove Ehrhart's result, Theorem 1.2.1. Since this result appears in Ehrhart [6], we give a sketch only.

Proof of Theorem 1.2.1: By lemmas 1.2.3 and 1.2.4,  $K$  has three chords  $c_1, c_2, c_3$  bisected by  $O$  the centre of gravity of  $K$ . The semitangents to the right of  $c_1$  and  $c_3$  at their endpoints, and to the left of  $c_2$  meet or are parallel. Let  $s_i$  be that open part of  $K$  cut off by chord  $c_i$  to the side of  $c_i$  to which the semitangents are drawn. By Winternitz Theorem, and noting that  $A(K) > 9/2 \det(\Lambda)$ , we have that

$$A(s_i) \geq 4/9 A(K) > 2 \det(\Lambda) \quad i=1,2,3.$$

Let  $\bar{s}_i$  denote the reflection of  $s_i$  in  $O$ . The set  $s_i \cup \bar{s}_i \cup c_i$  is a convex figure, centrally symmetric about  $O$ , with area greater than  $4 \det(\Lambda)$ . By Theorem 1.1.1, it therefore contains a pair of lattice points  $\pm u_i \neq 0$  in its interior, and so either both  $\pm u_i$  belong to  $c_i$  or one of them,  $u_i \in s_i$ . If this latter condition holds for  $i=1,2$ , and  $3$ , we note that the three regions  $s_i$ , by lemma 1.2.4 have no point in common. In order for each set to contain a lattice point  $u_i$ ,  $K$  must then contain at least two points of  $\Lambda$ . In any event then,  $K$  contains two points of  $\Lambda$ , and the result is proved.

We now state a result due to Scott [15], which we will employ later in much the same way the above proof employs Winternitz' Theorem.

Theorem 1.2.5 (Scott): Let  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$  and  $A_3$  be three open, convex sets in  $E^2$  satisfying  $\bigcap_{i=1}^3 A_i = \phi$ . Then

$$A\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^3 A_i\right) \geq 9/5 \min_j A(A_j)$$

and this result is best possible, and achieved only if  $\bigcup_{i=1}^3 A_i$  is a triangle, and each  $A_i$  is a trapezium bounded by the sides of the triangle and a chord through the centre of gravity of the triangle.

Proof: See Scott [15].

We now prove a result of Scott, two corollaries of which are of particular use in later chapters.

Definition 1.2.6: Let  $K$  be a closed convex body in  $E^n$  and  $\pi$  an intersecting hyperplane. We say that the section  $K \cap \pi$  is *visible* if there is some point  $P$  exterior to  $\pi$  (perhaps "at infinity") from which every boundary point of  $K \cap \pi$  (relative to  $\pi$ ) is visible. We call such a point  $P$  a *point of visibility*. Further, if  $\pi$  partitions  $E^n$  into the two closed halfspaces  $\pi^+$  and  $\pi^-$ , and if  $V(\pi^+ \cap K) \geq V(\pi^- \cap K)$ , then  $\pi^+$  is a *heavy side* of  $\pi$  (relative to  $K$ ).

Theorem 1.2.7 (Scott): Let  $K$  be a closed convex body in  $E^n$  containing the origin  $0$  and let  $\pi$  be a hyperplane through  $0$  such that  $\pi \cap K$  is symmetric about  $0$ , and  $\pi \cap K$  is visible from a heavy side of  $\pi$ . Then if  $V(K) \geq 2^n$ ,  $K$  contains a nonzero point of the integral lattice, on the heavy side of  $\pi$ .

Proof (Scott [13]): Let  $\pi$  partition  $K$  into the sets  $K_1$  and  $K_2$ , and suppose that a point of visibility  $V$  lies on the  $K_1$  side of  $\pi$ , which is a heavy side of  $\pi$ . Let  $\bar{K}_1$  denote the reflection of  $K_1$  in  $0$  and set  $K^* = K_1 \cup \bar{K}_1$ . By construction  $K^*$  is symmetric in  $0$ , and  $V(K^*) \geq 2^n$ .

Let  $B$  be a boundary point of  $K^*$ . To show that  $K^*$  is convex it suffices to show that for each such point  $B$  there is a hyperplane  $\sigma$  which supports  $K^*$  locally (that is, if  $N(B, \epsilon)$  is a spherical  $\epsilon$ -neighbourhood of  $B$  ( $\epsilon > 0$ ), then  $\sigma$  supports  $K^* \cap N(B, \epsilon)$ .) If  $B \notin \pi$  such a hyperplane clearly exists, since  $K_1$  and  $\bar{K}_1$  are convex. Suppose then that  $B \in \pi$ . Let  $V'$  denote the reflection of  $V$  in  $0$ , and let  $C$  be the double cone having common base  $K \cap \pi$  and vertices  $V$  and  $V'$ . Each half of  $C$  is convex and since  $VV'$  meets  $C \cap \pi$  in  $0$ ,  $C$  is itself convex. Hence at  $B$  there exists a hyperplane of support to  $C$ . Since  $K^* \subseteq C$ , this hyperplane also supports  $K^*$ , as required. Therefore  $K^*$  is convex.

Now, by Minkowski's Theorem 1.1.2,  $K^*$  contains a nonzero point of the integral lattice. Using the symmetry of  $K^*$ , we deduce that  $K_1$  contains a nonzero point of the integral lattice.

Theorem 1.2.8: Let  $K$  be a closed convex body in  $E^n$  containing the origin  $0$  and let  $\pi$  be a hyperplane through  $0$  such that  $\pi \cap K$  is symmetric about  $0$ , and  $\pi \cap K$  is visible from both sides of  $\pi$ . Then if  $V(K) \geq 2^{n+1}(t+1)$ ,  $K$  contains at least  $t$  points of the integral lattice besides  $0$ .

Proof: Since  $\pi \cap K$  is visible from both sides of  $\pi$ , we can apply the method of proof of 1.2.7 to both sides  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  of  $K$ . As in 1.2.7, both the sets  $K_1^* = K_1 \cup \bar{K}_1$  and  $K_2^* = K_2 \cup \bar{K}_2$  are convex

and 0-symmetric. We denote by  $v_1$  and  $v_2$  the volumes  $V(K_1)$  and  $V(K_2)$  respectively, so that  $v_1+v_2 \geq 2^{n-1}(t+1)$ . Let  $k_i$  be the integer  $[2^{1-n}v_i]$ . Since  $V(K_i^*) = 2v_i \geq 2^n k_i$ , by Theorem 1.1.5,  $K_i^*$  contains at least  $k_i$  pairs of lattice points  $\pm u^j$ , besides 0, for  $i=1,2$ . Noting the possibility that  $K_1^*$  and  $K_2^*$  may share lattice points on  $\pi$ , we thus deduce that  $K$  has at least  $k_1+k_2$  lattice points, besides 0. Since  $v_1+v_2 \geq 2^{n-1}(t+1)$ , the sum  $k_1+k_2 > t-1$ , as the sum of the fractional parts of  $2^{1-n}v_i$ ,  $i=1,2$  is strictly less than 2. As  $k_1+k_2$  is an integer, we deduce that  $k_1+k_2 \geq t$ , and so the Theorem is proved.

Theorem 1.2.9 (Scott, [12]): Let  $K$  be a closed convex set in the plane which contains 0 as an interior point. Suppose that there is a chord  $AOB$  of  $K$  which has midpoint 0, and which partitions  $K$  into two disjoint regions of equal area. Then if  $A(K) \geq 4$ ,  $K$  contains a nonzero point of the integral lattice.

Proof: The chord  $AOB$  with midpoint 0 is the intersection of  $K$  with a hyperplane (line) and is symmetric about 0. As supporting lines to  $K$  drawn at each of the endpoints of  $AOB$  must meet or be parallel, the section  $AOB$  is visible from some point. As  $K$  is partitioned into two regions of equal area, it is visible from the heavy side of  $AOB$ . Therefore we can apply Theorem 1.2.5 to deduce that  $K$  contains a nonzero point of the integral lattice.

Theorem 1.2.10: Let  $K$  be a closed convex set in the plane which contains the origin 0 as an interior point. Suppose that there is a chord  $AOB$  which has midpoint 0, and that  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at  $A$  and  $B$ . Then if  $A(K) \geq 2(t+1)$ ,  $K$  contains  $t$  nonzero points of the integral lattice.

Proof: As  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at  $A$  and  $B$ , the symmetric section  $AOB$  is visible from both sides of  $AOB$ . Hence the result follows from Theorem 1.2.8.

### 1.3 A boundedness result from Minkowski's Theorem

We now give a result of H. Cohn who employs Minkowski's Theorem to deduce a bound on any convex set  $K$  which contains a neighbourhood of the origin, but no other lattice points.

Theorem 1.3.1 (Cohn [2]): Let  $K$  be a convex body in  $E^d$  containing in its interior the hypersphere  $\sum_d(r)$  of radius  $r$  and centre at the origin ( $r < 1$ ). If  $K$  fails to contain in its interior those lattice points other than the origin in a second sphere  $\sum_d(c_d/r^{d-1})$ , then it will contain no lattice points at all except the origin. In fact  $K$  will then lie entirely within the second sphere.

Proof: See Cohn [2].

In our particular use of Theorem 1.3.1, the precise radius of the outer sphere is of no importance. We deduce a corollary to Theorem 1.3.1 suited to our needs.

Theorem 1.3.2: Let  $K$  be a convex body in  $E^d$  containing in its interior the hypersphere  $\sum_d(r)$  of radius  $r$  and centre at the origin. If  $K$  contains in its interior only those lattice points from a finite set  $S = \{\lambda_0, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_t\}$ , then  $K$  lies completely within a second sphere whose radius is  $c_d/r^{d-1}$ , where  $c_d$  is a constant dependant on  $S$  and  $d$ .

Proof: Since  $S$  is a finite set, we can choose a sublattice of  $\Lambda_0$ , say  $p\Lambda_0$ , similar to  $\Lambda_0$  such that none of the points  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_t$  belong to  $p\Lambda_0$ . We can then apply Theorem 1.3.1 to this lattice and the set  $K$ , and deduce the above result.

#### 1.4 Lattice polygon results

In later work we will need the following simple yet powerful result due to G. Pick.

Theorem 1.4.1 (G. Pick [10]): Let  $K$  be a convex polygon in the plane whose vertices lie at points of the integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$ . If  $K$  has  $b$  points of  $\Lambda_0$  on its boundary, and  $i$  points of  $\Lambda_0$  in its interior, then the area of  $K$  is given by

$$A(K) = i + \frac{1}{2}b - 1.$$

Proof: See Pick [10] or Honsburger [7], page 27.

We shall also use the following related result of P. Scott.

Theorem 1.4.2 (P. Scott): Let  $K$  be a convex polygon in the plane whose vertices lie at points of the integer lattice, and such that  $i \geq 1$ . Then

$$b \leq 2i + 7$$

and the equality holds if and only if  $K$  is an integral unimodular transform of the triangle with vertices  $(0,0)$ ,  $(3,0)$  and  $(0,3)$ .

Proof: See Scott [14].

### 1.5 Blaschke Selection Theorem

In later sections we will use the following result.

Theorem 1.5.1 (Selection Theorem of Blaschke): Let  $H_k$ , ( $k=1,2,\dots$ ) be a sequence of closed bounded convex sets contained in a fixed cube  $K$ . Then there exists a subsequence  $H_{k_r}$  converging to a convex set  $H$  in the Hausdorff metric.

Proof: See Lekkerkerker [8], page 12.

### 1.6 Results on the perimeter of a convex set.

Theorem 1.6.1 (Classical Isoperimetric Problem): Of all convex compact sets of a given perimeter, a circular disc is the unique set of largest area.

Proof: See Yaglom and Boltyanski [17], p. 51, or Honsberger [7], p. 67.

Theorem 1.6.2 (Besicovitch, Singmaster, Sounpouris): Let  $S$  be a convex compact set in  $E^2$ , with perimeter  $P(S)$ , inradius  $r_0$  and let  $P_0$  be the perimeter of the union of all incircles of  $S$ . Let  $T_p$  denote the collection of all compact subsets of  $S$ , with perimeter equal to  $P \leq P(S)$ .

Then  $T_p$  contains a set of largest area,  $T$ , and

- (a) If  $0 < P \leq 2\pi r_0$ ,  $T$  is a closed disc of radius  $P/2\pi$ .
- (b) If  $2\pi r_0 < P \leq P_0$ ,  $T$  is a rectangle with semicircular ends of radius  $r_0$ .
- (c) If  $P_0 < P \leq P(S)$ ,  $T$  is the union of all closed discs of some radius  $r$  which lie in  $S$ , for some  $r$ ,  $0 \leq r < r_0$ .

Proof: See Singmaster and Soupouris [16], or Besicovitch [1],  
Variant III.

Finally in this section we discuss Steiner Symmetrisation of a compact convex set in  $E^2$ . Let  $S$  be a compact convex set in  $E^2$ , and let  $\ell$  be a given line in  $E^2$ . We construct a new set which is symmetric about  $\ell$  as follows. For each line  $p$  orthogonal to  $\ell$ , replace the segment  $p \cap S$  by a congruent segment of  $p$  having its midpoint on  $\ell$ . Let  $S'$  be the union of these translated segments. We refer to  $S'$  as the Steiner symmetrand of  $S$  about  $\ell$ , and refer to the process as Steiner Symmetrisation.

Theorem 1.6.3: Steiner symmetrisation preserves convexity, area and central symmetry of sets. It does not increase perimeter, and actually decreases it unless  $S$  is already symmetric in a line parallel to  $\ell$ .

Proof: (See Eggleston [5], p. 90).

## CHAPTER 2

Minkowski's Theorem with Perimeter Constraints2.1 Introduction and Statement of Results

The results of this chapter, in particular section 2.9, have been also obtained by Croft [4].

Let  $S$  be a bounded convex set in  $E^2$  having area  $A(S)$  and perimeter  $P(S)$ . Let  $\mathcal{S}$  denote the set of all such sets which are symmetric in the origin  $0$ , and which contain no non-zero point of the integral lattice. Write

$$A_p(S) = \max_{\substack{S \in \mathcal{S} \\ P(S)=P}} A(S)$$

The existence of  $A_p(S)$  is assured by a simple application of the Blaschke selection theorem, Theorem 1.5.1.

Theorem 2.1.1

- (a) If  $0 \leq P \leq 2\pi$ , then  $A_p(S) = P^2/4\pi$ .
- (b) If  $2\pi \leq P \leq 4+\pi$ , then  $A_p(S) = 4 - (8-P)^2/4(4-\pi)$ .
- (c) If  $4+\pi \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ , then  $A_p(S) = 4 - [8(4+\pi)-P^2]/4(4+\pi)$ .
- (d) If  $2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3}) \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$ , then  $A_p(S) = 4 - [2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})-P]^2/4(2\sqrt{3}-\pi)$ .
- (e) If  $2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3}) \leq P$ , then  $A_p(S) = 4$ .

The result in (a) is a restatement of the classical isoperimetric result, Theorem 1.6.1, since for  $0 \leq P \leq 2\pi$ , the circular disc having centre  $0$  and perimeter  $P$  is a member of  $\mathcal{S}$ . Minkowski's Theorem, Theorem 1.1.3 gives the upper bound 4 for  $A_p(S)$ . The result in (e) gives those values of  $P$  for which this bound is attained.

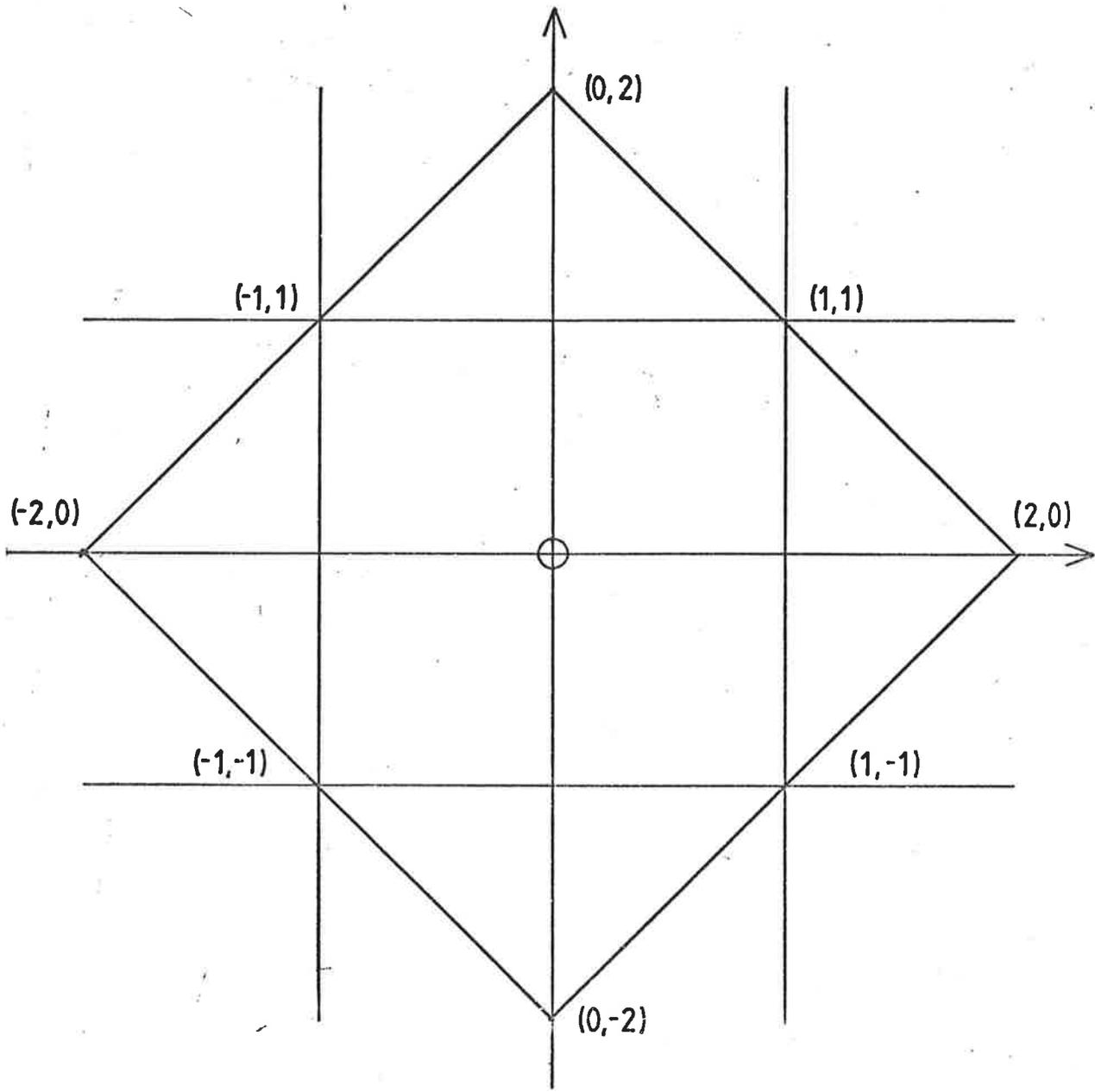


FIGURE 2.1

## 2.2 An Application of Steiner Symmetrisation.

The proof of Theorem 2.1.1 can be greatly simplified using Steiner symmetrization, as described in §1.6.

For  $S \in \mathcal{S}$ , we use the notation  $d(S)$ ,  $\partial S$  for the diameter and boundary of  $S$  respectively. Let  $U$  be the convex hull of the points  $\pm(1, \pm 1)$ , and let  $Q$  be the convex hull of  $\pm(2, 0)$ ,  $\pm(0, 2)$ . The polygon  $Q$  is shown in Figure 2.1, opposite.

Lemma 2.2.1 Let  $S \in \mathcal{S}$  be a set for which  $d(S) < 4$ . Then there exists a set  $S' \in \mathcal{S}$  which satisfies the following

- (a)  $S' \subseteq Q$ .
- (b)  $S'$  is symmetric in the lines  $y = \pm x$ .
- (c)  $A(S') = A(S)$ ,  $P(S') \leq P(S)$  and  $P(S') = P(S)$  only if  $S' = S$ .
- (d)  $S' \subset H$ , where  $H \in \mathcal{S}$  is a hexagon, and  $H = Q \cap L$  where  $L$  is a parallelogram, symmetric in the lines  $y = \pm x$ , with sides passing through points  $\pm(1, 0)$ ,  $\pm(0, 1)$ .

Proof We first show that  $S$  extends beyond  $Q$  in at most two quadrants of the plane. Let  $q$  be a point of  $S \setminus Q$  in the first quadrant. By reflecting  $S$  in the line  $y = x$  if necessary, we may assume that  $q$  lies in the second octant of the plane. Now since  $q$  lies in the half-plane  $y \geq 1$ , and  $(0, 1)$  is not interior to  $S$ , it follows by convexity that any point  $r$  of  $S \setminus Q$  in the second quadrant must lie in the half-plane  $y \leq 1$ , and so in the fourth octant of the plane. Denoting the point  $(-1, 1)$  by  $r'$ , we see that

$$A(\Delta Oqr) > A(\Delta Oqr') > 1.$$

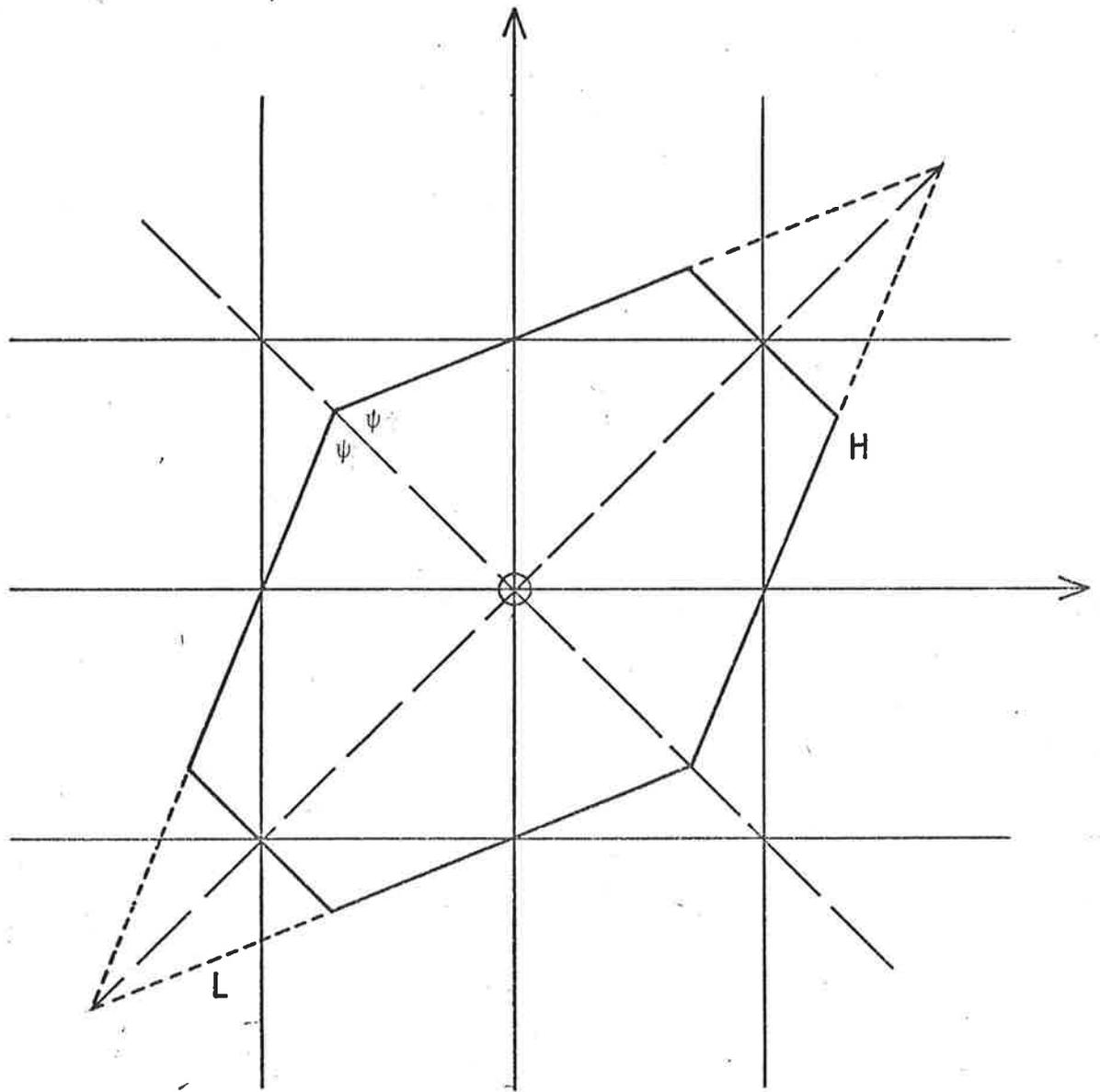


FIGURE 2.2

Hence the parallelogram contained in  $S$  and having vertices  $\pm q, \pm r$  has area greater than 4. This contradicts the bound on  $A(S)$  given by Minkowski's theorem, Theorem 1.1.3.

By reflecting  $S$  in the  $y$ -axis if necessary, we may assume then that  $S$  does not extend beyond  $Q$  in the second and fourth quadrants of the plane. In fact, since  $d(S) < 4$ ,  $S$  lies in the strip  $|x-y| \leq 2$ .

We now obtain a new set  $S'$  by symmetrizing  $S$  in the line  $y = -x$ . The lines  $y = x+1, y = x, y = x-1$  intercept the interior of  $S$  (and so the interior of  $S'$ ) in segments of length at most  $\sqrt{2}, 2\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}$  respectively. Since  $S$  lies in the strip  $|x-y| \leq 2$  it follows that  $S'$  contains no non-zero lattice points in its interior.

By Theorem 1.6.3,  $S' \in S$ ,  $A(S') = A(S)$ , and  $P(S') \leq P(S)$  with equality only if  $S' = S$ . Since  $S'$  is both centrally symmetric in  $0$  and symmetric in  $y = -x$ , it is symmetric in  $y = x$ . This symmetry of  $S$  together with its convexity and the fact that  $\pm(1,1)$  are not interior to  $S'$ , enables us to deduce that  $S' \subset Q$ . Further,  $S'$  does not contain  $\pm(1,0)$  or  $\pm(0,1)$  as interior points; hence  $S'$  is contained in a parallelogram whose sides pass through  $\pm(1,0), \pm(0,1)$ , and whose diagonals lie along the lines  $y = \pm x$ . Finally,  $S' \subset Q \cap L = H$ , and  $H \in S$ . This completes the proof of Lemma 2.2.1.

We note that by reflecting  $S'$  in the  $y$ -axis, if necessary, we may assume that  $\partial H$  has non-negative slope at  $(0,1)$ . Let the angles common to the hexagon  $H$  and the parallelogram  $L$ , of Lemma 2.2.1, measure  $2\psi$ . We can then denote these figures explicitly by  $H(\psi), L(\psi)$  respectively, where  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . These polygons are shown in Figure 2.2, opposite.

### 2.3 Hexagons which have area 4.

We now establish part (e) of Theorem 2.1.1.

Let  $S \in \mathcal{S}$  be a set with  $A(S) = 4$ . We show that  $P(S) \geq 2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})$  ( $\approx 7.73$ ). Let us assume that  $P(S) < 8$ . Then  $d(S) < 4$ , and by Lemma 2.2.1, there exists a set  $S' \in \mathcal{S}$  where  $A(S') = 4$ ,  $P(S') \leq P(S)$  and  $S'$  is contained in a hexagon  $H(\psi)$ . In fact since  $H(\psi)$  has area 4,  $S' = H(\psi)$ . It is easily verified that the perimeter of  $H(\psi)$  is  $P(H(\psi)) = 2\sqrt{2}(2 \operatorname{cosec} \psi + 1 - \cot \psi)$ .

As  $\frac{d}{d\psi}(P(H(\psi))) = 2\sqrt{2}(1 - 2 \cos \psi)(\sin \psi)^{-2}$ , the function  $P(H(\psi))$  assumes its minimal value of  $2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})$  when  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{3}$ ;  $H(\frac{\pi}{3})$  is an equiangular hexagon. Therefore  $P(S) \geq P(S') \geq 2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})$ , as required.

It remains to be shown that for each value of  $P$  in this range, there is a set  $S \in \mathcal{S}$  having perimeter  $P$  and area 4. For  $P \geq 8$  we obtain  $S$  by suitably shearing the square  $U$  parallel to the  $x$ -axis. Also, over the interval  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi \leq \frac{\pi}{3}$ , the perimeter of  $H(\psi)$  is a continuous function of  $\psi$ . Since  $H(\frac{\pi}{4}) = U$ , we deduce that for each value of  $P$ ,  $2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3}) \leq P \leq 8$ , there is a hexagon having perimeter  $P$  and area 4. We conclude that for  $2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3}) \leq P$ ,  $A_p(S) = 4$ .

### 2.4 Extreme sets are symmetric in $y = \pm x$ .

Let  $S \in \mathcal{S}$  be a set for which  $A(S) = A_p(S)$  where  $P(S) = P < 2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})$ . We show that  $S$  must satisfy the conditions of the set  $S'$  in Lemma 2.2.1.

Since  $d(S) < 4$ , by Lemma 2.2.1 there exists a set  $S' \in \mathcal{S}$  for which  $A(S') = A(S)$ ,  $P(S') \leq P(S)$ , and such that  $S'$  is contained in a hexagon  $H(\psi) = H$ . Now define  $S(\lambda) = \lambda H + (1 - \lambda)S'$  ( $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ ). Then  $S' \subset S(\lambda) \subset H$ , and since the perimeter of  $S(\lambda)$

is a continuous function of  $\lambda$ , there exists a set  $S^* = S(\lambda^*)$  ( $0 \leq \lambda^* \leq 1$ ) for which  $P(S^*) = P(S)$ . If  $\lambda > 0$ ,  $A(S^*) > A(S') = A(S)$ , contradicting our choice of  $S$ . Hence  $\lambda = 0$ , and  $S = S'$ , as required.

Since  $H(\psi)$  contains no non-zero lattice points in its interior,  $S$  is the set of largest area and perimeter  $P$  contained in  $H(\psi)$ . We use a result of Besicovitch, Theorem 1.6.2 which characterises  $S$ , and shows that  $S \in \mathcal{S}$ .

### 2.5 Extreme sets are rounded polygons.

Let  $S \in \mathcal{S}$  be a set for which  $A(S) = A_p(S)$ . By §2.4,  $S$  is contained in a polygon  $H(\psi)$ , for some  $\psi$ . By the definition of  $A_p(S)$ ,  $S$  is the largest set of perimeter  $P$  contained in the convex set  $H(\psi)$ . Hence, by Theorem 1.6.2,  $S$  is the union of all discs of some particular radius, contained in  $H(\psi)$ , or, more simply, is  $H(\psi)$  with rounded corners. Since the two sides of  $H(\psi)$ ,  $\partial Q \cap \partial H(\psi)$ , are not longer than the four equal sides of  $H(\psi)$ , this rounding can occur in one of only two ways. Either each corner is rounded individually (as when the circular arcs have small radius), or each of the short sides is rounded off completely by a single circular arc. In the latter case,  $L(\psi)$  has effectively been rounded at each corner, using arcs of some common radius.

We formulate these cases together. A polygon  $G$  is rounded at each vertex by arcs of fixed radius  $r$ , to form the rounded polygon  $G_r$ . We assume that  $r$  is small enough for each side of  $G$  to contribute a line segment to  $G_r$ . We number the vertices of  $G$ , and let  $2\psi_i$  be the internal angle at the  $i$ th vertex. In rounding the corners of  $G$ , two segments of length  $r \cot \psi_i$  are lost from the boundary of  $G$  at the  $i$ th vertex of  $G$ , and

replaced by circular segments. Hence

$$A(G_r) = A(G) - r^2 \left( \sum_i \cot \psi_i - \pi \right) = A(G) - r^2 k(G) \quad \text{say} \quad (1)$$

$$P(G_r) = P(G) - 2r k(G). \quad (2)$$

Solving equation (2) for  $r$ , and substituting in equation (1) gives

$$A(G_r) = A(G) - [P(G) - P(G_r)]^2 [4k(G)]^{-1}. \quad (3)$$

When  $G_r$  is obtained from  $G$  by rounding, equation (3) enables us to find the maximum value of  $A(G_r)$  when  $P(G_r)$  is a given constant. Our problem is complicated by the fact that  $G = H(\psi)$  or  $G = L(\psi)$  are themselves dependent on a parameter  $\psi$ . To find the maximum value of  $A(G_r)$  we need to examine the derivative  $A(G_r)$  with respect to  $\psi$ :

$$\frac{dA(G_r)}{d\psi} = \frac{dA(G)}{d\psi} - \frac{2[P(G) - P(G_r)]}{4k(G)} \frac{dP(G)}{d\psi} + \frac{[P(G) - P(G_r)]^2}{4[k(G)]^2} \frac{dk(G)}{d\psi} \quad (4)$$

## 2.6 Rounded hexagon or parallelogram?

Let  $\psi$  be given. According to Besicovitch's construction, there will be a certain value  $P_0(\psi)$  of the perimeter for which  $H_r(\psi)$  and  $L_r(\psi)$  coincide. For  $P < P_0(\psi)$ , it will not be possible to construct  $H_r(\psi)$ , there being insufficient perimeter to reach the sides of  $H(\psi)$  through  $\pm(1,1)$ . For  $P > P_0(\psi)$ ,  $L_r(\psi)$  will contain  $\pm(1,1)$  as interior points, and will thus no longer be a member of  $S$ .

We show that

$$P_0(\psi) = P(G) - k(G) \frac{\sqrt{2}(1 - \tan \psi)}{1 - \sec \psi}$$

where  $G = L(\psi)$ .

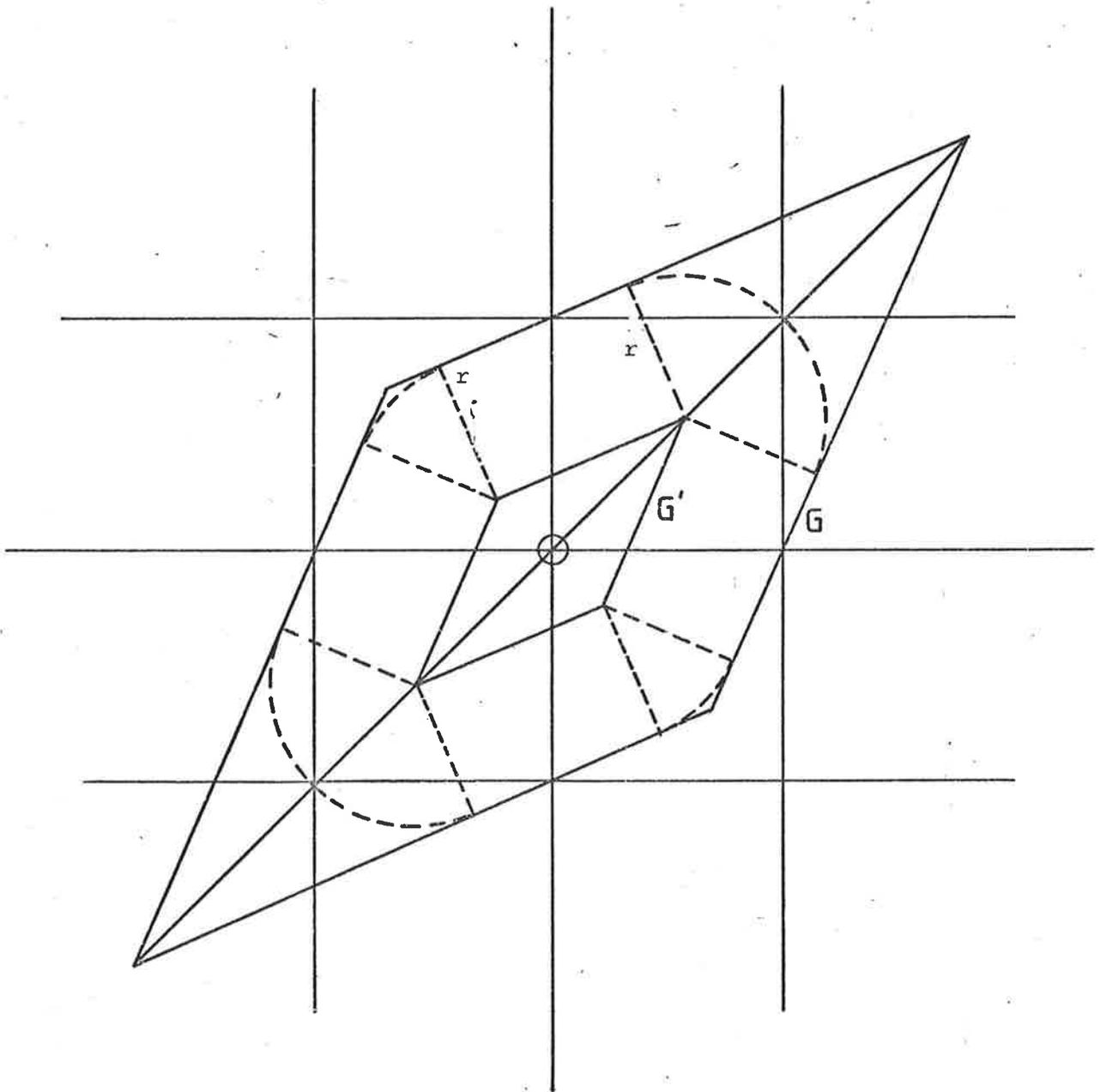


FIGURE 2.3

Let  $G_r$  be the rounded parallelogram with perimeter  $P_0(\psi)$ . Then the points  $\pm(1,1)$  lie on the boundary  $\partial G_r$ , the diameter of  $G_r$  lies along the line  $y = x$ , and  $d(G_r) = 2\sqrt{2}$ . We can also calculate  $d(G_r)$  by using the construction shown in figure 2.3, opposite.

We note that the parallelogram  $G$  has diameter  $2 \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - \psi\right) \cdot \sec \psi$ , and that the similar parallelogram  $G'$  is obtained from  $G$  by an enlargement of scale factor  $1 - r \sec\left(\psi - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ . Now, since the vertices of  $G'$  are the centres of the circular boundary arcs of  $G_r(\psi)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} d(G_r) &= 2r + 2 \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4} - \psi\right) \cdot \sec \psi [1 - r \sec\left(\psi - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)] \\ &= 2r(1 - \sec \psi) + \sqrt{2}(1 + \tan \psi). \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

Equating this to  $2\sqrt{2}$ , solving for  $r$ , and substituting in (2) gives, for  $\psi \in \left[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$  and  $G = L(\psi)$ , that

$$P_0(\psi) = P(G) - k(G) \cdot \sqrt{2}(1 - \tan \psi) \cdot (1 - \sec \psi)^{-1}.$$

Both the functions  $P(L(\psi))$  and  $k(L(\psi))$  are continuous for  $\psi \in \left[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ . We thus deduce that the limiting value of  $P_0(\psi)$ , as  $\psi$  approaches  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ , is  $\sqrt{2}(2 + \pi)$ . As this equals the value of  $P_0(\psi)$  given by the definition of  $P_0(\psi)$ ,  $P_0(\psi)$  is a continuous function on  $\left[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ .

We next show that  $P_0\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$  is the least value taken by  $P_0(\psi)$ , for  $\psi \in \left[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ . It is easily calculated that

$$\begin{aligned} P_0(\psi) - P_0\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= P(G) - k(G) \sqrt{2}(1 - \tan \psi)(1 - \sec \psi)^{-1} - \sqrt{2}(2 + \pi) \\ &= \sqrt{2}(1 - \cos \psi)^{-1} [2(2 - \sin \psi - \cos \psi) \sin \psi^{-1} + \pi(\sin \psi - \cos \psi)] \\ &\quad - \sqrt{2}(2 + \pi) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sqrt{2}(1 - \sin \psi)(1 - \cos \psi)^{-1} [2(2 - \cos \psi) \sin \psi^{-1} - \pi] \\
&= 0 \quad \text{iff} \quad \sin \psi = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad 2(2 - \cos \psi) = \pi \sin \psi.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus  $P_0(\psi) = P_0(\frac{\pi}{2})$  only if  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{2}$  or if  $2(2 - \cos \psi) = \pi \sin \psi$ . We examine this later condition as a quadratic equation in  $\cos \psi = c$ ,

$$(2(2-c))^2 = \pi^2(1-c^2)$$

This equation has discriminant  $(\frac{\pi}{2})^2((\frac{\pi}{2})^2 - 3)$ , which is negative.

Hence, by the continuity of  $P_0(\psi)$ ,  $P_0(\psi) > P_0(\frac{\pi}{2})$ , for all  $\psi \in (\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . We note that  $P_0(\frac{\pi}{3}) = 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ .

### 2.7 Determination of rounded polygon $H(\psi)$ or $L(\psi)$ from $P$ .

We apply the results of §2.5 to our problem.

Case 1. Suppose  $G = H(\psi)$ . By straightforward calculation we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
A(G) &= 4 \\
P(G) &= 2\sqrt{2}(2 \operatorname{cosec} \psi + 1 - \cot \psi) \\
k(G) &= 2 \cot \psi + 4 \tan \frac{\psi}{2} - \pi \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2} P(G) - (2 + \pi). \\
&> 0, \quad \text{since} \quad P(G) \geq 2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting in equation (4) and setting  $P(G_r) = P$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dA(G_r)}{d\psi} &= \left[ \frac{P(G) - P}{2\sqrt{2} k(G)} \right] \left[ -\sqrt{2} \frac{dP(G)}{d\psi} + \left( \frac{P(G) - P}{\sqrt{2} k(G)} \right) \frac{dk(G)}{d\psi} \right] \\
&= \left[ \frac{P(G) - P}{2\sqrt{2} k(G)} \right] \frac{dP(G)}{d\psi} \left[ -\sqrt{2} + \left( \frac{P(G) - P}{2k(G)} \right) \right] \\
&= 2r \cdot (1 - 2 \cos \psi) \operatorname{cosec}^2 \psi \cdot (r - \sqrt{2}).
\end{aligned}$$

Clearly  $r - \sqrt{2} < 0$ , since circles of radius  $\sqrt{2}$  can not be contained in  $G$ . Since we are assuming  $2\pi \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(1 + \sqrt{3})$ , the

first term is non-negative for all  $\psi$ , and zero only when  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{3}$ .  
 Finally,  $1 - 2 \cos \psi$  ( $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ) is an increasing function of  $\psi$   
 with a zero at  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{3}$ . Hence for any value of  $P$ ,  $A(G_r)$  assumes  
 its maximal value when and only when  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{3}$ .

Case 2. Suppose now that  $G = L(\psi)$ . Setting  $a = \tan \psi + \cot \psi$  we  
 find that

$$A(G) = a + 2$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(G) &= 2\sqrt{2}(\operatorname{cosec} \psi + \sec \psi) \\ &= 2\sqrt{2} a^{\frac{1}{2}}(a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$k(G) = 2a - \pi.$$

Hence from equation (4), setting  $P(G_r) = P$ ,

$$\frac{dA(G_r)}{d\psi} = \frac{da}{d\psi} \left[ 1 - \frac{\{P(G)-P\}}{2k(G)} \frac{2\sqrt{2}(a+1)}{a^{\frac{1}{2}}(a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} + 2 \frac{\{P(G)-P\}^2}{\{2k(G)\}^2} \right]$$

Solving this quadratic expression in  $r = \frac{P(G)-P}{2k(G)}$ , and simplifying  
 gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dA(G_r)}{d\psi} &= \frac{da}{d\psi} (r - (a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}}(2a)^{-\frac{1}{2}})(r - a^{\frac{1}{2}}(2(a+2))^{-\frac{1}{2}}).2 \\ &= \frac{da}{d\psi} \frac{1}{2[k(G)]^2} [P - \sqrt{2}(a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}}a^{-\frac{1}{2}}\pi][P - \sqrt{2}a^{\frac{1}{2}}(a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(4+\pi)]. \end{aligned}$$

Now  $\frac{da}{d\psi} = \operatorname{cosec}^2 \psi (\tan^2 \psi - 1) \geq 0$  for  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , with equality only  
 if  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . The term  $\frac{1}{2[k(G)]^2}$  is obviously positive. A simple  
 calculation shows that  $\sqrt{2}(a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}}a^{-\frac{1}{2}} \leq 2$  with equality only for  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ .  
 Since  $P \geq 2\pi$ , the term  $[P - \sqrt{2}(a+2)^{\frac{1}{2}}a^{-\frac{1}{2}}\pi]$  is non-negative, and zero  
 only when  $P = 2\pi$  and  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Finally, for  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi < \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{2}a^{\frac{1}{2}}(a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$   
 is an increasing function of  $\psi$ , assuming its minimum value of 1 when  
 $\psi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . Hence, if  $P \leq 4+\pi$ ,

$$P - \sqrt{2} a^{\frac{1}{2}} (a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (4+\pi) \leq P - (4+\pi) \leq 0.$$

If  $P \geq 4 + \pi$ , then  $P - \sqrt{2} a^{\frac{1}{2}} (a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (4+\pi)$  is a decreasing function of  $\psi$ , with a zero at  $\psi = T$ , corresponding to the root of

$$P = \sqrt{2} a^{\frac{1}{2}} (a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} (4+\pi). \quad (6)$$

Thus for  $2\pi \leq P < 4+\pi$ ,  $A(G_r)$  assumes its maximum value at  $\psi = \frac{\pi}{4}$ . For  $4 + \pi \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$ ,  $A(G_r)$  assumes its maximum value when  $\psi = T$ .

We can now establish part (b) of the theorem. Suppose  $2\pi \leq P \leq 4+\pi < \sqrt{2}(2+\pi)$ . By section 2.6,  $G$  must be a parallelogram. Hence  $A(G_r)$  assumes its maximum when  $G = L(\frac{\pi}{4})$ , and

$$A_p(S) = A(L_r(\frac{\pi}{4})) = 4 - (8 - P)^2/4(4 - \pi).$$

### 2.8 Determination of $A_p(S)$ for $P > 4 + \pi$

Suppose that  $4+\pi \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$ . From §2.7 we know that the function  $A(G_r(\psi))$  assumes its maximum when  $G = L(T)$  or when  $G = H(\frac{\pi}{3})$ . However, we do not yet know whether the rounded polygons  $G_r$  can be formed for  $P$  in the given range.

Let  $G = L(T)$ . For  $P \geq 4+\pi$ , the angle  $T$  is determined by (6):

$$P = \sqrt{2} (4+\pi) a^{\frac{1}{2}} (a+2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{2} (4+\pi) (\sin T + \cos T)^{-1}.$$

From (2), the radius by which  $L_r(T)$  is rounded is given by

$$r = (P(G) - P) [2k(G)]^{-1}.$$

Substituting for  $P(G)$ ,  $k(G)$ , and then for  $P$  we obtain

$$r = P/(8+2\pi) = [\sqrt{2}(\sin T + \cos T)]^{-1}. \quad (7)$$

From (5), the diameter of  $G_r$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} d(G_r) &= 2r(1 - \sec T) + \sqrt{2}(1 + \tan T) \\ &= \sqrt{2}(1 + 2 \sin T)(\sin T + \cos T)^{-1} . \end{aligned}$$

If  $d(G_r) > 2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $L_r(T)$  contains  $\pm(1,1)$  as interior points.

We find that for  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq T \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $d(G_r) > 2\sqrt{2}$  if and only if  $T > \frac{\pi}{3}$ .

From (7), this occurs precisely when  $P > 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ .

The area of  $L_r(T)$  can be found from (3) by substituting in the value of  $P$  from (6). A short calculation gives

$$A(L_r(T)) = 2 + P^2/4(4+\pi) .$$

Again, directly from (3) we have

$$A(H_r(\frac{\pi}{3})) = 4 - [2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3}) - P]^2/4(2\sqrt{3}-\pi)$$

Graphically, these two area functions of  $P$  are represented by parabolas, the first upright, and the second inverted. A lengthy but elementary calculation shows that these parabolas touch when  $P = 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ . It follows that  $A(L_r(T)) \geq A(H_r(\frac{\pi}{3}))$ , with equality only when  $P = 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ . Since we have just shown that the construction of  $L_r(T)$  is valid for  $P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$  we have established part (c) of the theorem.

Suppose now that  $2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3}) \leq P \leq 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$ . As we note in §6,  $P_0(\frac{\pi}{3}) = 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ , so  $H_r(\frac{\pi}{3})$  can be constructed for  $P$  in this range. However,  $L_r(T)$  is now disallowed, as  $\pm(1,1)$  are interior points. Substituting the value of  $r$  given by (2) in expression (5), we see that the diameter  $d(L(\psi))$  is a continuous function of  $\psi$  for  $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \psi < \frac{\pi}{2}$ . It follows that for values of  $\psi$  lying in a certain open interval about  $T$ , the rounded parallelogram

$L_r(\psi)$  having perimeter  $P$  will contain  $\pm(1,1)$  as interior points. Also, the function  $A(L_r(\psi))$  is a continuous function of  $\psi$  with a single (maximum) turning point at  $\psi = \pi$ . Hence the maximum allowable value of  $A(L_r(\psi))$  will be assumed for a rounded parallelogram  $L_r(\psi)$  which has  $\pm(1,1)$  as boundary points. But now  $L_r(\psi)$  coincides with  $H_r(\psi)$ , and of all such rounded hexagons of perimeter  $P$ ,  $H_r(\frac{\pi}{3})$  has the largest area. Since  $H_r(\frac{\pi}{3})$  can be constructed, we have established part (d) of Theorem 2.1.1.

This completes the proof of Theorem 2.1.1.

## 2.9 A related problem.

Consider now the problem of finding

$$h(\beta) = \max_{S \in \mathcal{S}} \frac{A(S)}{[P(S)]^\beta}$$

where  $0 \leq \beta \leq 2$ . The existence of such a maximum is guaranteed by Blaschke's selection theorem, Theorem 1.5.1. When  $\beta = 0$ , the solution of this problem is given by Minkowski's Theorem 1.1.3. When  $\beta = 2$ , we have the classical unconstrained isoperimetric problem, Theorem 1.6.1. This problem has also been solved, in a slightly more general context, in Croft [4].

For given  $\beta$ , let  $S^* \in \mathcal{S}$  be the set for which  $h(\beta)$  is attained.  $S^*$  must have the largest area of all sets of perimeter  $P(S^*)$ . Hence  $S^*$  must be one of the sets  $S$  for which  $A(S) = A_p(S)$  in the above theorem. In particular, by calculating the ratios  $A_p(S)/P$  we are able to confirm a conjecture of Scott [11].

Theorem 2.9.1 The value of  $h(1)$  is  $2(2+\sqrt{\pi})^{-1}$ . This is attained when  $S$  is a square with rounded corners,  $L_r(\frac{\pi}{4})$ , whose radius  $r = 2(2+\sqrt{\pi})^{-1}$ .

Proof. In order to verify this result, by our comment above, we need only verify that, as a function of  $P$ ,  $A_p(S)/P$  has a single local maximum at  $P = 4\sqrt{\pi}$ .

For  $P \in (0, 2\pi]$ ,  $A_p(S)/P = P/4\pi \leq \frac{1}{2}$ , and clearly  $A_p(S)/P$  is an increasing function.

For  $P \in (2\pi, 4+\pi]$ ,  $A_p(S)/P = [4 - (8-P)^2/4(4-\pi)]/P$ . The derivative  $D_p(A_p(S)/P) = (16\pi - P^2)/4(4-\pi)P^2$ , and so  $A_p(S)/P$  has a local maximum when  $P = 4\sqrt{\pi} = 7.08 \in (2\pi, 4+\pi)$ .

For  $P \in (4+\pi, 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3}))$ ,  $A_p(S)/P = (8(4+\pi) - P^2)/4(4+\pi)P$ , and  $D_p(A_p(S)/P) = (P^2 + 8(4+\pi))/(-4(4+\pi)P^2) < 0$  for all  $P$ .  $A_p(S)/P$  is therefore a decreasing function for  $P$  in this range.

For  $P \in (2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3}), 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3}))$ ,

$$A_p(S)/P = [4 - (2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3}) - P)^2/4(2\sqrt{3}-\pi)]/P, \text{ and}$$

$$D_p(A_p(S)/P) = [16(2-\sqrt{3}+\pi) - P^2]/4(2\sqrt{3}-\pi)P^2, \text{ and so}$$

the formula specifying  $A_p(S)/P$  in this range has a local maximum when  $P = 4\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}+\pi} = 7.385$ . However  $7.385 < 7.393 = 2\sqrt{2}(4+\pi)/(1+\sqrt{3})$ . Hence  $A_p(S)/P$  is decreasing for all  $P$  in this range.

For  $P > 2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$ ,  $A_p(S)/P = 4/P < 4/2\sqrt{2}(1+\sqrt{3})$  and is clearly a decreasing function of  $P$ .

Hence  $A_p(S)/P$  has a unique local and global maximum, when  $P = 4\sqrt{\pi}$ , on  $(0, \infty)$ . It is readily confirmed that  $h(1) = 2(2+\sqrt{\pi})^{-1}$ ,  $r = 2(2+\sqrt{\pi})^{-1}$ , and that  $S$  is  $L_r(\frac{\pi}{4})$  a square with rounded corners.

## 2.10 Conjectured analogue of Theorem 2.1.1 for a general planar lattice.

Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in  $E^2$  with generators  $a$  and  $b$ , such that  $\|a\| \leq \|b\| \leq \|c\|$  for all  $c \in \Lambda$ ,  $c \neq a$ , and such that  $\theta$ , the angle from  $a$  to  $b$ ,  $\theta \in [\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . We let  $S(P)$  denote the set

of all compact convex 0-symmetric sets, which contain no non-zero lattice points in their interiors, and which have perimeter  $P(S) = P$ . By a simple application of the Blaschke selection theorem, Theorem 1.5.1, it can be shown that  $S(P)$  contains at least one set of largest area, for each value of  $P$ . Let  $S_*(P)$  be such a set.

Conjecture 2.10.1 Suppose  $\|a\| \neq \|b\|$  and that  $\theta \neq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Then there are numbers  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$  and  $P_3$  with the following properties.

$S_*(P)$  is uniquely determined, and for the indicated range of  $P$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is one of the following.

(a) If  $0 < P \leq 2\pi\|a\|$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is a closed disc.

(b) If  $2\pi\|a\| < P \leq P_1$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is the convex hull of two discs whose line of centres is orthogonal to  $a$ , and whose radii are  $\|a\|$ .

(c) If  $P_1 < P \leq P_2$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is the convex hull of four discs, the straight line segments of whose boundary are bisected by the points  $\pm a$ ,  $\pm b$ .

(d) If  $P_2 < P \leq P_3$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is the convex hull of six discs, the straight line segments of whose boundary are bisected by the points  $\pm a$ ,  $\pm b$ , and  $\pm(a-b)$ , and whose sides when extended form an equiangular hexagon.

(e) If  $P > P_3$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is one of the well known critical polygons whose area is  $4\|a\|\|b\|\sin\theta = 4 \det(\Lambda)$ , and so which satisfy the inequality of Minkowski's Theorem with equality.

If  $\|a\| = \|b\|$  or  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is not uniquely determined by the above properties, and indeed for  $\|a\| = \|b\|$ ,  $S_*(P)$  is not unique.

If  $\theta \neq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , any set  $S$  which satisfies one of conditions (a), (b), (c) or (d) and which belongs to  $S(P)$ , is  $S_*(P)$  for  $P = P(S)$ .

Although I cannot prove this result, I have proved enough to suggest that the result is true. The difficulty lies in identifying  $S_*(P)$  when it has four lattice points on its boundary.

## CHAPTER 3

MINKOWSKI'S THEOREM WITH RELAXED SYMMETRY CONDITIONS3.1 Introduction

Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in the plane having determinant  $\det(\Lambda)$ . We say the set  $K$  is *admissible* if it is a closed convex set in the plane with  $0$  the only point of  $\Lambda$  in its interior. Minkowski's fundamental theorem, Theorem 1.1.3 asserts that if an admissible set  $K$  is centrally symmetric about  $0$ , then its area  $A(K)$  is no greater than  $4 \det(\Lambda)$ . We call a chord of  $K$  which is bisected by  $0$ , a *chord of symmetry* of  $K$ . Minkowski's hypothesis requires that all chords through  $0$  be chords of symmetry. We say a chord of symmetry of  $K$  is *extremal* if  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at its endpoints. Theorem 1.2.8 states that  $A(K) \leq 4 \det(\Lambda)$  if  $K$  has an extremal chord of symmetry.

Let  $s(K)$  denote the number of chords of symmetry of an admissible set  $K$ . We show

Theorem 3.1.1 If  $s(K)$  is even or infinite,  $A(K) \leq 4 \det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 3.1.2 If  $s(K) > 1$ ,  $A(K) \leq 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 3.1.3 If  $s(K) > 3$ ,  $A(K) \leq 4 \det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 3.1.2 is analogous to Theorem 1.2.1 which states that  $A(K) \leq 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$ , whenever  $K$  satisfies the more restrictive condition that  $0$  is the centre of gravity of  $K$ . It will be sufficient to establish the theorems when  $\Lambda$  is the integral lattice  $\Lambda_0$ , since  $s(K)$  and  $A(K)/\det(\Lambda)$  are invariant under

a linear transformation of  $K$  and  $\Lambda$ . As  $\det(\Lambda_0) = 1$ , we delete all further reference to  $\det(\Lambda)$  in this chapter.

We show that each of the above theorems gives the best possible bound on  $A(K)$ . Let  $E_1$  be the convex hull of the points  $(-1,2)$ ,  $(2,-1)$  and  $(-1, 1)$ . This triangle  $E_1$  is admissible, and has only three chords of symmetry, passing through  $(1,0)$ ,  $(0,1)$  and  $(-1,-1)$  respectively. As  $A(E_1) = 4.5$  and  $s(E_1) = 3$ , Theorem 3.1.2 is best possible.

For Theorems 3.1.1 and 3.1.3 we argue as follows. Let  $U$  be the convex hull of the four points  $(\pm 1, \pm 1)$ . Let  $C \subset U$  be the union of half a regular  $2m$ -gon and a semicircle on a common diameter with midpoint  $0$ . Then  $s(C) = m > 1$ . The set  $K(\epsilon) = (1-\epsilon)U + \epsilon C$ ,  $0 < \epsilon < 1$ , is an admissible set and since  $U$  is centrally symmetric about  $0$ ,  $s(K(\epsilon)) = s(C) = m$ . Since for sufficiently small  $\epsilon$ ,  $A(K(\epsilon))$  can be arbitrarily close to  $A(U) = 4$ , Theorems 3.1.1 and 3.1.3 give the best possible bound for finite  $s(K)$ . Taking  $\epsilon = 0$ , we obtain the square  $U$  with  $A(U) = 4$  and  $s(U)$  infinite.

Finally, let  $E_2$  be the convex hull of the three points  $(\pm t, -1)$  and  $(0, 1/t)$  where  $t > 1$ . The triangle  $E_2$  is admissible, and has only one chord of symmetry parallel to the  $x$ -axis. As  $A(E_2) > t$  and  $s(E_2) = 1$ , we can deduce no upper bound on  $A(K)$  from the information that  $s(K) = 1$ .

### 3.2 Proof of Theorem 3.1.1

If all the chords of  $K$  which pass through  $0$  are chords of symmetry of  $K$ , Minkowski's Theorem 1.1.2 gives the desired result. We may thus assume there is a chord of  $K$ ,  $P_0OP'_0$  which is not a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . We denote each chord  $POP'$  of

$K$  by the label  $c(\theta)$ , where  $\theta$  is the angle  $P_0OP$  measured in an anti-clockwise direction and  $\theta \in [0, \pi]$ . The continuous function  $d(\theta) = (PO)^2 - (OP')^2$  has a zero when and only when  $c(\theta)$  is a chord of symmetry of  $K$ , and by our choice of  $P_0OP'_0$ ,  $d(0) = -d(\pi) \neq 0$ . By applying the intermediate value theorem to  $d(\theta)$ , we deduce that  $d(\theta)$  has at least one zero on  $[0, \pi]$ . If  $s(K)$  is even, then  $d(\theta)$  has an even number of zeros, and so at least one zero  $\theta_*$ , occurs at an extremum of  $d(\theta)$ . Let  $\bar{K}$  denote the reflection of  $K$  in the origin  $O$ , and let  $P_*OP'_*$  be the chord  $c(\theta_*)$ . If  $d(\theta)$  has a local maximum at  $\theta_*$ , then in a neighbourhood of  $P_*$  the boundary of  $K$  is contained in  $\bar{K}$ , and so a supporting line  $s$  to  $K$  at  $P'_*$ , together with a parallel line  $s'$  through  $P_*$ , form a pair of parallel supporting lines to  $K$  at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_*)$ , a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . We argue similarly if  $d(\theta)$  has a local minimum at  $\theta_*$ . In either case,  $c(\theta_*)$  is an extremal chord of symmetry of  $K$ , and so by Theorem 1.2.8 we deduce that  $A(K) \leq 4$ .

If  $s(K)$  is infinite, using the above notation, there is a point  $A$  on the boundary of  $K$ , which is an accumulation point of the infinite set  $I$  of endpoints  $P$  of chords of symmetry. As the boundary of  $K$  is continuous,  $A$  is itself an endpoint of a chord of symmetry  $AOA'$ . If we consider a sequence  $(P_n)$  in  $I$  which has limit  $A$ , the limit  $l$  of the sequence of lines  $(P_nA)$  is a supporting line to  $K$  at  $A$ . Similarly the sequence  $(P'_nA')$  has as its limit a line  $l'$  which is a supporting line to  $K$  at  $A'$ . Since, for each  $n$ , the line  $P_nA$  is parallel to the line  $P'_nA'$ , it follows that  $l$  and  $l'$  are parallel. Again, Theorem 1.2.8 gives that  $A(K) \leq 4$ , and the proof is complete.

Corollary 3.2.1 If  $d(\theta)$  has a zero at which  $d(\theta)$  is an extremum, then  $c(\theta)$  is an extremal chord of symmetry, and  $A(K) \leq 4$ .

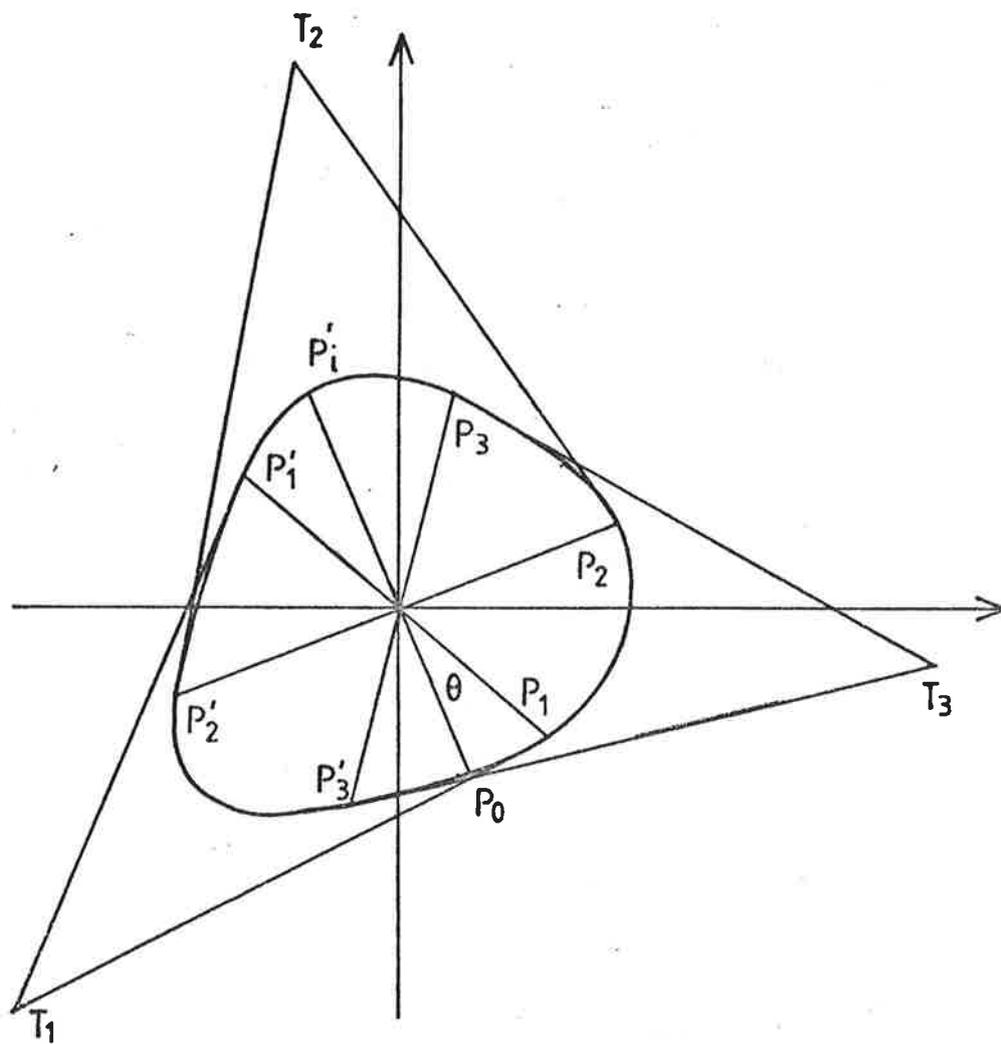


FIGURE 3.1

### 3.3 Proof of Theorem 3.1.2

By Theorem 3.1.1 and Corollary 3.2.1,  $A(K) \leq 4$  if either  $s(K) = 2$ , or if any zero of  $d(\theta)$  occurs at a point where  $d(\theta)$  is also an extremum. Suppose then that  $s(K) \geq 3$ . By lemma 1.2.4  $K$  has three chords of symmetry  $P'_1P_1$ ,  $P'_2P_2$  and  $P'_3P_3$  labelled successively such that the semitangents to the right at the endpoints of  $\vec{P}'_1P_1$ , to the left at the endpoints of  $\vec{P}'_2P_2$  and to the right of  $\vec{P}'_3P_3$  meet or are parallel. Since we already have that  $A(K) \leq 4$  if any such pair is parallel, we suppose that  $T_i$  is the point of intersection of the semitangents indicated at  $P_i$  and  $P'_i$ . This situation is illustrated in Figure 3.1, opposite.

Let  $K_i$  denote the intersection of  $K$  with the closed triangular region  $P_iP'_iT_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 3$ ), and let  $\bar{K}_i$  be the reflection of  $K_i$  in  $O$ . By Minkowski's Theorem 1.1.1, as  $K_i \cup \bar{K}_i$  is an admissible set, centrally symmetric about  $O$ ,

$$A(K_i \cup \bar{K}_i) = 2A(K_i) \leq 4.$$

It is easily seen that  $\bigcup_{i=1}^3 (K \sim K_i) = \bigcup_{i=1}^3 K_i = K$ , and hence that  $\bigcap_{i=1}^3 (K \sim K_i) = \phi$ . Let  $X_i$  be the interior of  $K \sim K_i$ . The three sets  $X_i$  are open convex sets in  $E^2$  with no point in common. Hence by Theorem 1.2.5 we have that

$$A(K) \geq \frac{9}{5} \min_{i=1, 2, 3} A(K \sim K_i). \quad (2)$$

However, as  $A(K_i) \leq 2$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 3$ ), we also have

$$A(K) \leq 2 + \min_{i=1, 2, 3} A(K \sim K_i). \quad (3)$$

From (2) and (3) we deduce that  $A(K) \leq 4.5$ ; for equality to be attained here, we required equality in both (2) and (3).

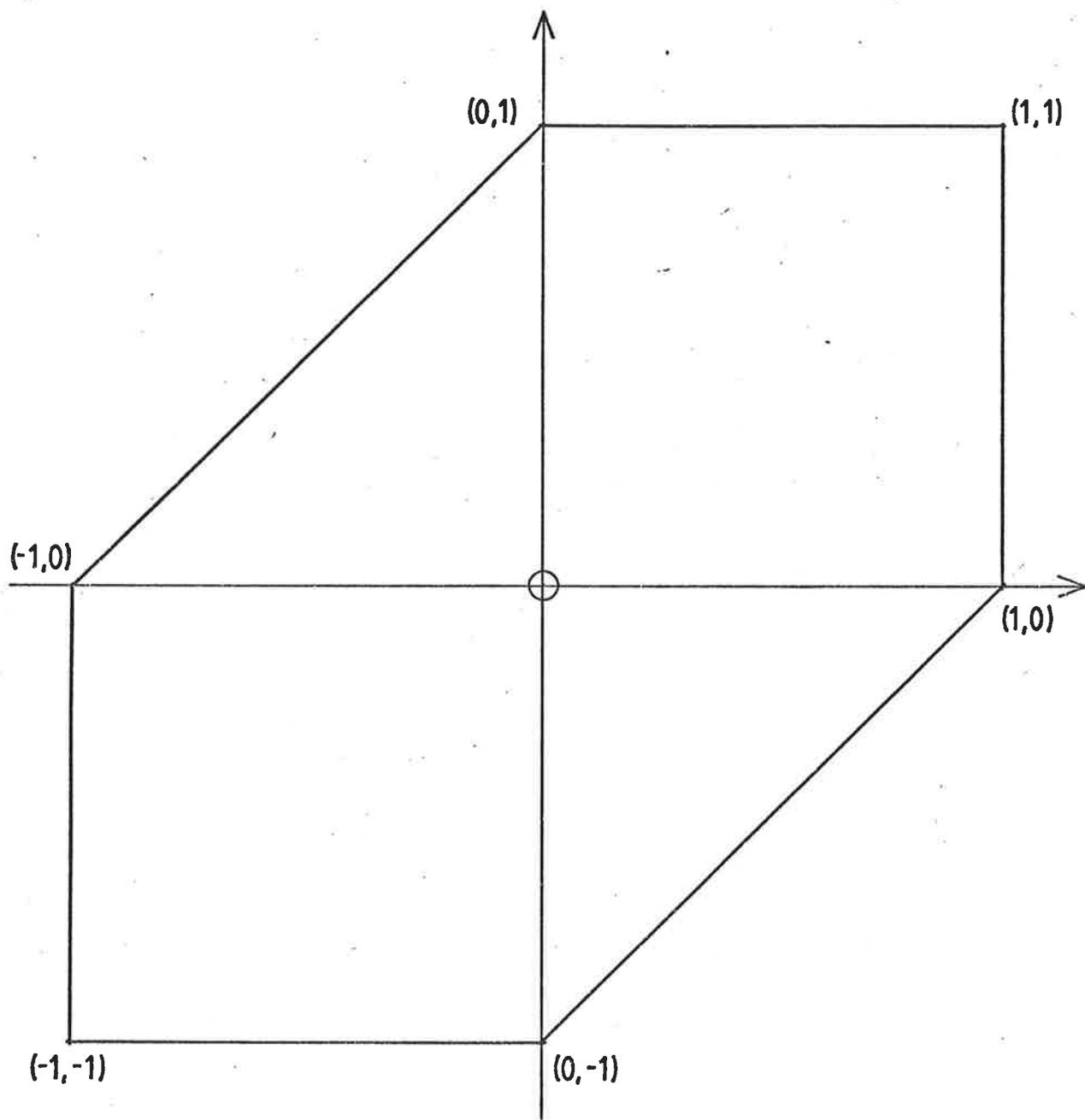


FIGURE 3.2

By Theorem 1.4.1 equality in (2) is possible only when  $K$  is a triangle  $T$  with centre of gravity  $O$ , and with three chords of symmetry, each parallel to an edge of  $T$ . The set  $E_1$  of Section 3.1 is such a triangle.

### 3.4 Polygons and lattice points

We shall need the following preliminary results. A *lattice polygon*  $P$  is a simple polygon which has each vertex at a lattice point. Let  $v, b, c$  denote the number of lattice points which are vertices, boundary points, interior points respectively of  $P$ , and let  $A$  denote the area of  $P$ . From Pick's Theorem 1.5.1, it is known that for lattice  $\Lambda_0$  and lattice polygon  $P$  that,  

$$A = \frac{1}{2}b + c - 1.$$

Lemma 3.4.1: Let  $P$  be a convex lattice polygon.

- (i) If  $v = 4$ , and  $P$  has no pair of parallel edges, then  $c \geq 1$ .
- (ii) If  $v \geq 5$ , then  $c \geq 1$ .
- (iii) If  $v = 6$ , and  $c = 1$ , then  $P$  is equivalent under an integral unimodular transformation to the centrally symmetric hexagon  $H_0$  illustrated opposite, in Figure 3.2.
- (iv) If  $v > 6$ ,  $c \geq 2$ .

Proof Let  $P_1 = V_1V_2V_3V_4$  be a convex lattice quadrilateral having no pair of parallel sides and let  $P_2 = V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5$  be a convex lattice pentagon. In each case, since it is not possible for the sum of every pair of adjacent angles to be less than or equal  $\pi$ , we may assume that  $\angle V_2 + \angle V_3 > \pi$ . Suppose too that

$V_4$  is no further than  $V_1$  from the line  $V_2V_3$ . Then, in each case, the vertex  $X$  of the parallelogram  $V_2V_3V_4X$  is a lattice point which is interior to the polygon  $P_i$ . As any lattice polygon with  $v > 5$  contains as a subset a lattice pentagon, we have proved (i) and (ii).

Let  $L$  be the unique interior lattice point of the convex lattice hexagon  $H = V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5V_6$ . If  $L$  does not lie on  $V_1V_4$ , then one of  $LV_4V_5V_6V_1$  or  $LV_1V_2V_3V_4$  is a proper convex pentagon, and we deduce from (ii) that  $c \geq 2$ . Hence  $L$  lies on each of the diagonals  $V_1V_4$ ,  $V_2V_5$ ,  $V_3V_6$ . In fact, since the lattice points on a line are regularly spaced, the uniqueness of  $L$  implies that  $L$  is the common midpoint of the diagonals. From (i) we deduce that the diagonals are parallel to the edges of  $H$ , and so  $H$  is the image of  $H_0$  under some integral unimodular transformation.

Finally, let  $P$  be a convex lattice polygon with  $v \geq 6$  and  $c = 1$ . Choose 5 vertices of  $P$ . By (iii) each remaining vertex of  $P$  lies at the unique lattice point which completes a centrally symmetric hexagon about  $L$ . Thus  $v = 6$ . Hence if  $v > 6$  we must have  $c \geq 2$ .

Lemma 3.4.2 Let  $H_0$ , with vertices  $V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5V_6$  be the convex lattice hexagon of Figure 3.2. Let  $X$ , with vertices  $T_1T_2\dots T_n$  be a convex polygon, with  $H_0 \subset X$ . Let the vertices  $V_2$  and  $V_3$  of  $H_0$  lie on the edge  $T_2T_3$  of  $X$ , and let the edges  $T_1T_2$  and  $T_3T_4$  of  $X$  have  $V_1$  and  $V_4$  as midpoints respectively. Then  $T_1$ ,  $V_5$ ,  $V_6$  and  $T_4$  are collinear. In particular, if each edge of  $X$  contains a vertex of  $H_0$ ,  $X$  must be a quadrilateral.

Proof The diagonal  $V_1V_4$  of  $H_0$  is parallel to, and midway between the edges  $V_2V_3$  and  $V_5V_6$ . Hence  $T_1$  and  $T_4$  lie at the same distance from  $V_1V_4$  as  $T_2$  and  $T_3$  respectively, that is, on the line  $V_5V_6$ .

Lemma 3.4.3 Let  $M$  be a polygon having  $n$  edges, and having a lattice point at the midpoint of each edge.

- (i) If  $n$  is odd, each vertex of  $M$  is a lattice point.
- (ii) If  $n$  is even, the lattice polygons with vertices at the alternate midpoints have the same centroid as  $M$ .
- (iii) If,  $n = 4m + 2$  ( $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), and the midpoints of opposite edges occur in pairs which are symmetric about  $0$ , then  $M$  is centrally symmetric about  $0$ .

Proof Let  $V_i$  and  $m_i$  be the vertices of  $M$  and the midpoints of the sides of  $M$  respectively, for  $i \in I = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . With the convention  $V_0 = V_n$ , we write this as

$$\frac{1}{2}(V_{i-1} + V_i) = m_i \in \Lambda, \quad i \in I. \quad (4)$$

When  $n$  is odd, equations (4) give

$$V_n = m_1 - m_2 + m_3 - \dots + m_n.$$

Thus  $V_n \in \Lambda$ , and from (4) we deduce that  $V_i \in \Lambda$  for all  $i \in I$ .

When  $n$  is even, summing the alternate equations in (4) gives

$$\frac{1}{2}(V_1 + \dots + V_n) = m_2 + m_4 + \dots + m_n = m_1 + m_3 + \dots + m_{n-1}. \quad (5)$$

We obtain (ii) simply by dividing (5) by  $n/2$ .

Now suppose  $n = 4m + 2$ , and  $m_j = -m_{j+2m+1}$ , for  $j \in J = \{1, 2, \dots, 2m+1\}$ . Adding the expressions in (4) for  $m_j$  and  $m_{j+2m+1}$ , we get

$$\frac{1}{2}(v_{j-1} + v_j + v_{j+2m} + v_{j+2m+1}) = 0, \quad j \in J. \quad (6)$$

Taking the alternating sum of these equations gives

$$\frac{1}{2}(v_{4m+2} + v_{2m+1}) = 0;$$

that is  $v_{4m+2} = -v_{2m+1}$ . Using equations (6), it now follows that  $M$  is symmetric in 0.

### 3.5 An analytical result

In the proof of Theorem 3.1.3 we will use two continuous transformations and a limiting process to reduce the number of admissible sets under consideration. We prove

Lemma 3.5.1 Let  $(K_i)$  be a sequence of admissible convex sets such that  $K_i \rightarrow K$  in the Hausdorff metric. Suppose that for all  $i$ ,  $s(K_i) = k$ , an odd number, and also that  $K_i$  has no extremal chord of symmetry. Then either

- (i)  $s(K) = k$ , and  $K$  has no extremal chord of symmetry,
- or (ii)  $A(K) \leq 4$ .

Proof Let  $d(\theta)$  be defined for the set  $K$  as in Section 3.2, with  $\theta$  measured from a direction such that  $d(0) = -d(\pi) \neq 0$ . For all  $i$ , we define the function  $d_i(\theta)$  corresponding to the set  $K_i$  in the same manner, with  $\theta$  measured from the same direction used for the set  $K$ . As no chord of  $K_i$  is extremal, by Corollary 3.2.1 we have that no zero of  $d_i(\theta)$  is an extremum

of  $d_i(\theta)$ . By elementary analysis, we choose an infinite subsequence  $(K_i)$ ,  $i \in G \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ , such that the zeros of  $d_i(\theta)$ ,  $i \in G$ , on the interval  $[0, \pi)$ , form  $k$  convergent subsequences. Since we lose no generality by doing so, we assume that the sequence  $(K_i)$  is this subsequence  $(K_i)$ ,  $i \in G$ . We now show that unless  $A(K) \leq 4$ , then the limits  $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$  of the sequences of zeros of the functions  $d_i(\theta)$  are all the zeros of  $d(\theta)$ , and are distinct.

In Section 3.2 we noted that each function  $d_i(\theta)$  is continuous in  $[0, \pi)$ . Since  $(K_i)$  converges to  $K$  in the Hausdorff metric, the functions  $d_i(\theta)$  converge to  $d(\theta)$  uniformly. Suppose  $d(\theta_1) \neq 0$  where  $\theta_1$  is the limit of a convergent sequence of zeros of  $d_i(\theta)$ . In a neighbourhood of  $\theta_1$ ,  $|d(\theta)| \geq \frac{1}{2}|d(\theta_1)|$ , by the continuity of  $d(\theta)$ . Hence, by the uniform convergence of  $d_i(\theta)$  to  $d(\theta)$ , there exists a number  $N$ , so that for  $i \geq N$ ,  $|d_i(\theta)| > 0$  for  $\theta$  in this neighbourhood of  $\theta_1$ . Therefore no zeros of  $d_i(\theta)$  lie in this neighbourhood of  $\theta_1$ , for  $i \geq N$ . By contradiction we have proved that limits of convergent sequences of zeros of  $d_i(\theta)$  are zeros for  $d(\theta)$ .

Suppose  $\theta_{k+1}$  is a zero of  $d(\theta)$  on  $[0, \pi)$ , not one of the limits above. If  $\theta_{k+1}$  is an accumulation point of the set of zeros of  $d(\theta)$ , then  $K$  has an infinite number of chords of symmetry, and Theorem 3.1.1 then implies  $A(K) \leq 4$ . If  $\theta_{k+1}$  is an extremum of  $d(\theta)$ , then Corollary 3.2.1 implies that  $A(K) \leq 4$ . We may therefore assume that  $\theta_{k+1}$  lies between two neighbourhoods  $[\theta_-, \theta_{k+1})$  and  $(\theta_{k+1}, \theta_+]$  in which  $d(\theta)$  is non zero and of opposite sign. By the uniform convergence of  $d_i(\theta)$  to  $d(\theta)$ , there exists a number  $N$  such that for  $i \geq N$ ,  $d_i(\theta)$  is non zero

and of opposite sign in the neighbourhoods  $[\theta_-, (\theta_- + \theta_{k+1})/2]$  and  $[(\theta_{k+1} + \theta_+)/2, \theta_+]$ . As each  $d_i(\theta)$  is a continuous function, for  $i \geq N$ ,  $d_i(\theta)$  has a zero in the interval  $((\theta_- + \theta_{k+1})/2, (\theta_{k+1} + \theta_+)/2)$ . By again choosing a subsequence of the sequence of functions  $(d_i(\theta))$ , we can assert that there is a sequence of zeros of the functions  $d_i(\theta)$  lying in the above interval, which converge. As shown in the previous paragraph, this sequence converges to a zero of  $d(\theta)$  which lies in the above interval, and so must converge to  $\theta_{k+1}$ . As this contradicts our choice of  $\theta_{k+1}$ , we deduce that  $\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_k$  are the only zeros of  $d(\theta)$ .

Finally we show that  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_k$  are distinct. Suppose to the contrary that  $\theta_1 = \theta_2$ . Without loss of generality we assume that  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  are the limits of  $(\theta_1(n))$  and  $(\theta_2(n))$  respectively, where  $\theta_1(n) < \theta_2(n)$  are zeros of  $d_n(\theta)$ . For given  $n$ , and  $j \in \{1, 2\}$ , the zero of  $d_n(\theta)$  at  $\theta_j(n)$  corresponds to a chord of symmetry  $P_{j,n}OP'_{j,n}$  of  $K_n$ . As  $n$  becomes large,  $P_{1,n}$  and  $P_{2,n}$  approach  $P$ , on the chord of symmetry  $POP'$  of  $K$  corresponding to the zero of  $d(\theta)$  at  $\theta_1 = \theta_2$ . By again taking a suitable subsequence of  $K_i$  (if necessary) and renaming this  $(K_i)$ , we assume that the limit as  $n$  becomes large of the angle of orientation of the chord  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$  exists. We call this limit  $\varphi$ .

We show that the line  $l$  through  $P$ , with angle of orientation  $\varphi$ , is a supporting line to  $K$  at  $P$ . For suppose to the contrary that  $l$  is a proper chord of  $K$  which meets the boundary of  $K$  at  $Q$ . By taking  $n$  sufficiently large to make  $P_{1,n}$  and  $P_{2,n}$  very close to  $P$ , and the angle of orientation of the chord  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$  very close to  $\varphi$ , we may assume that the line  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$

passes as close as we choose to  $Q$ . By convexity  $K_n$  is bounded by the line  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$  outside the segment  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$ . Thus, taking values of  $n$  approaching infinity, and since  $K_n$  converges to  $K$ ,  $K$  is bounded by the limit of the line  $P_{1,n}P_{2,n}$ . As this limit is  $l$ , we contradict our choice of  $l$  as a proper chord of  $K$ . Similarly, we can construct a supporting line to  $K$  at  $P_*$  parallel to  $l$ . By Theorem 1.2.8, we then deduce that  $A(K) \leq 4$ .

### 3.6 Proof of Theorem 3.1.3

We now prove Theorem 3.1.3. From Theorem 3.1.1 we may assume  $s(K)$  is odd, and so at least five. As  $O$  is an interior point of the convex set  $K$ , by Cohn's Theorem 1.3.1,  $K$  is separated from all non-zero lattice points by a finite number of lines. Hence  $K$  is contained in a polygon  $K$ , bounded by these lines and supporting lines to  $K$  at the endpoints of its chords of symmetry. We may clearly choose  $K$  so that each edge of  $K$  contains in its relative interior at least one endpoint of a chord of symmetry or a lattice point. As  $K$  has no smaller area and no fewer lines of symmetry than  $K$ , we take  $K$  to be the polygon  $K$ . Should an edge of  $K$  contain an endpoint of each of three or more chords of symmetry, by the convexity of  $K$  the other endpoints lie on a parallel edge. From Theorem 1.2.8, we then know that  $A(K) \leq 4$ . We therefore may assume that the polygon  $K$  has at least five edges.

We now modify the polygon  $K$  so that each edge of  $K$  contains at least one lattice point in its relative interior. If an edge  $E$  of  $K$  contains no lattice point in its relative interior, we form edge  $E(t)$ , parallel to  $E$  and distance  $t$  further than  $E$

away from 0. Denote by  $K(t)$  the polygon obtained from  $K$  by including this new edge and extensions of the edges of  $K$  adjacent to it. We continue to increase  $t$  until one of three things happens:

- (a) the length of  $E(t)$  becomes zero, or
- (b)  $E(t)$  has a lattice point on it, in its relative interior, or
- (c)  $s(K(t)) \neq s(K)$ .

One of these things must happen, since as  $K$  contains a disc about 0, each modified set  $K(t)$  also contains the same disc, and, by Theorem 1.3.1 such sets are uniformly bounded.

Suppose (c) occurs either with or before either (a) or (b). This can occur in two ways. Firstly, we suppose that  $K(t^*)$  is the first modified set for which  $s(K) \neq s(K(t^*))$ . As neither (a) or (b) are true for  $t < t^*$ , each of the sets  $K_i = K(t^* \cdot (1 - 1/i))$  is admissible, and since (c) is false also for  $t < t^*$ ,  $s(K_i) = s(K)$  is odd for each set. As the sequence  $(K_i)$  converges to  $K(t^*)$  in the Hausdorff metric, we can deduce from lemma 3.5.1 that  $A(K(t^*)) \leq 4$ .

Secondly, we suppose that  $s(K) = s(K(t^*))$  for all  $t \in [0, t^*]$ , but that this equality holds on no longer interval. By our assumption that (c) occurs with or before (a) or (b), and noting that the transformation is such that (a) or (b) must occur for some first modified set, we may assume that neither (a) nor (b) occur for  $t < t^* + \delta$ , for some  $\delta > 0$ . Thus we can choose a sequence  $K_i = K(t)$ ,  $t \in (t^*, t^* + \delta \cdot 1/i)$ , of admissible sets, such that  $(K_i)$  converges to  $K(t^*)$  in the Hausdorff metric. We assume that  $s(K_i)$  is odd and finite for each  $i$ , since

otherwise we could deduce by Theorem 3.1.1 that  $A(K_i)$ , and so  $A(K(t^*))$ , is no greater than 4. In fact, as only three edges of  $K(t)$  are modified by the transformation, the value of  $s(K_i)$  differs from  $s(K(t^*))$  by at most six, for we showed in an earlier argument that  $A(K(t)) \leq 4$  if any edge of  $K(t)$  contains the endpoints of more than two chords of symmetry. Hence we can choose a subsequence of  $K_i$ , which we relabel  $(K_i)$ , so that each  $s(K_i)$  is odd, constant, and not equal to  $s(K(t^*))$ . By applying Lemma 3.5.1 to this sequence  $(K_i)$ , we deduce that  $A(K(t^*)) \leq 4$ .

We may therefore assume that  $K$  has at least five edges, each of which contains a lattice point in its relative interior. By Lemma 3.4.1(ii) we deduce that  $0$  is an interior point of the lattice polygon  $Y$  whose vertices are those lattice points on the boundary of  $K$ .

We now further modify  $K$  so that each edge  $E$  of  $K$  either contains two lattice points in its relative interior, or one lattice point at its midpoint. We show that such a modification increases the area  $A(K)$ , does not decrease  $s(K)$  and does not remove from the boundary of  $K$  any of the lattice points on it. Suppose  $L$ , not the midpoint of edge  $E$  of  $K$ , is the only lattice point in the relative interior of  $E$ . We replace  $E$  by another edge  $E(\psi)$ , through  $L$ , at angle  $\psi$  to  $E$ . As  $L$  is not the midpoint of  $E$ , we may orient  $\psi$  so that for (small) positive  $\psi$ , the set  $K(\psi)$  bounded by  $E(\psi)$  and the extensions of edges of  $K$  other than  $E$ , has area greater than  $A(K)$ . As the boundary of  $K$  is continuous, and since  $E(\psi)$  pivots about  $L$  which is not its midpoint,  $A(K(\psi))$  increases continuously

with  $\psi$  until one of three things happens:

- (d)  $L$  is the midpoint of  $E(\psi)$ , or
- (e)  $E(\psi)$  contains two lattice points in its relative interior, or
- (f)  $s(K(\psi)) \neq s(K)$ .

No lattice points are lost from the boundary of  $K$  in this modification of  $K$ . For, were  $L_1$  to be lost at angle  $\psi$ , as  $L$  is not the mid-point of  $E(\psi)$ , the lattice point  $2L-L_1$  lies in the relative interior of  $E(\psi)$ . Hence the convex hull of those lattice points on the boundary of  $K$ ,  $Y \subseteq K(\psi)$ . As  $0$  is an interior point of  $Y$ , we have by Cohn's Theorem 1.3.1 that the sets  $K(\psi)$  are uniformly bounded. Hence, for sufficiently large  $\psi$ , (d) or (e) must occur. Suppose (f) occurs either with or before either (d) or (e).

This can occur in two ways. Firstly suppose  $K(\psi^*)$  is the first modified set for which  $s(K(\psi^*)) \neq s(K)$ . The sequence of admissible sets  $K_i = K(\psi^*(1-1/i))$  converges to  $K(\psi^*)$  in the Hausdorff metric, and  $s(K_i) = s(K)$  is odd for each set  $K_i$  in the sequence. By applying Lemma 3.5.1 to the sequence  $(K_i)$  we deduce that  $A(K(\psi^*)) \leq 4$ .

Secondly, suppose that  $s(K) = s(K(\psi))$  for all  $\psi \in [0, \psi^*]$ , but this equality holds on no longer interval. We can apply the same argument used above for  $K(t)$ , noting carefully that only three edges of  $K$  are modified by this transformation on any sufficiently small open interval. As above we can deduce that  $A(K(\psi^*)) \leq 4$  in this case.

In performing the above modifications to the polygon  $K$ , there is a possibility that an infinite sequence of modifications

may occur. For example, a sequence of edge turning modifications may successively upset the previously set lattice point midpoints of edges. However, all the modifications of  $K$  contain  $Y$ , and so contain a fixed disc about  $0$ . By Cohn's Theorem 1.3.1, all such modifications of  $K$  are bounded by a uniform bound.

We may thus apply Blaschke's Selection Theorem 1.7.1 to any such sequence of modifications of  $K$ ,  $(K_i)$ , and obtain a limiting figure  $K^*$ , which can no longer be modified. However,  $s(K_i) = s(K)$  is odd for each of these admissible sets  $K_i$ , and the sequence  $K_i$  converges to  $K^*$  in the Hausdorff metric. Hence by Lemma 3.5.1 we deduce that unless  $s(K^*) = s(K)$  then  $A(K) \leq 4$ .

We therefore may assume  $s(K^*) = s(K)$ , and since  $K^*$  is immutable by the above modifications it must be a convex polygon, with at least five edges, each edge containing at least one lattice point in its relative interior. Further, if any edge  $E$  of  $K^*$  contains only one lattice point  $L$  in its relative interior,  $L$  is the midpoint of  $E$ . We call such an edge  $E$  a *lattice midpoint edge*. Since  $s(K^*) = s(K) \geq 5$ , by Theorem 3.1.2 we deduce that  $A(K^*) \leq 4.5$ .

Denote by  $Z$  the convex lattice polygon formed by the convex hull of the set of lattice points which lie on the boundary of  $K^*$ , but are not vertices of  $K^*$ . As  $0$  is the only possible lattice point in the interior of  $Z \subset K^*$ , we deduce from Lemma 3.4.1 (iv) that  $K^*$  has either,

- (g) five edges, one containing two lattice points in its relative interior, the other four edges each lattice midpoint edges, or

- (h) five edges, each lattice midpoint edges, or
- (i) six edges, each lattice midpoint edges.

We first show that cases (g) and (h) cannot arise. In case (g), by Lemma 3.4.1(iii),  $Z$ , having six lattice points on its boundary, is a centrally symmetric hexagon  $H$  which is an affine transform of  $H_0$ , the hexagon shown in Figure 3.2. The incidences of  $K^*$  with  $H$  listed in (g), become, when transformed by the inverse of this affine transformation, incidences of the image of  $K^*$  with  $H_0$ . Indeed, these incidences are exactly those needed for Lemma 3.4.2. Hence the image of  $K^*$ , and hence  $K^*$ , is a quadrilateral. Hence case (g) cannot occur. In case (h), by Lemma 3.4.3(i), each vertex of  $K^*$  is also a lattice point, and so  $K^*$  has ten boundary lattice points. By Pick's Theorem 1.5.1, we deduce that  $A(K^*) = 5$ . However, since this contradicts the bound on  $A(K^*)$  given above by Theorem 3.1.2, case (h) cannot arise.

Finally, in case (i), by Lemma 3.4.1(iii), as  $Z$  has six vertices and only one interior lattice point, it is a centrally symmetric hexagon. Thus the lattice points on the boundary of  $K^*$  number 6, and are symmetrically located about 0. By Lemma 3.4.3(iii) then,  $K^*$  is itself centrally symmetric about 0. By Minkowski's Theorem 1.1.3, we deduce that  $A(K^*) \leq 4$ .

### 3.7 Boundary Lattice Points

We now give a simple corollary to Theorem 3.1.2, attained by using lemma 3.4.1 to describe the configuration of lattice points on the boundary of a set.

Corollary 3.7.1 Let  $K$  be a strictly convex compact set in  $E^2$  which contains in its interior only one lattice point 0, and

which has more than four lattice points on its boundary. Then  $K$  contains either 5 or 6 lattice points on its boundary, and has area no more than  $4.5\det(\Lambda)$ .

Proof Let  $Z$  denote the closed convex hull of  $K \cap \Lambda$ . As  $K$  is strictly convex and has more than four lattice points on its boundary,  $Z$  is a convex lattice polygon with at least five vertices. Since  $Z \subset K$  and as  $K$  contains only one point  $0$  of  $\Lambda$  in its interior, we deduce from lemma 3.4.1 that  $0 \in Z$ , and that  $Z$  has at most 6 vertices. Indeed if  $Z$  has six vertices it is centrally symmetric about  $0$ , and so the three common chords of  $Z$  and  $K$  passing through the vertices of  $Z$  and  $0$  are each chords of symmetry of  $K$ . By Theorem 3.1.2 therefore, as  $s(K) \geq 3$ ,  $A(K) \leq 4.5\det(\Lambda)$ .

Suppose now that  $Z$  has only five vertices. We claim that  $Z$  and  $K$  share two common chords whose endpoints are vertices of  $Z$ , and which are bisected by  $0$ . The conclusion of the theorem then follows, as  $s(K) \geq 2$  and so by Theorem 3.1.2,  $A(K) \leq 4.5\det(\Lambda)$ . Now  $Z$  has no non-zero lattice point in its interior. Also,  $Z$  has no lattice point in the relative interior of any edge, since the strict convexity of  $K$  would then place such a lattice point in the interior of  $K$ . We label  $Z$  cyclically as  $A_1A_2A_3A_4A_5$ , and note that since  $Z$  has 5 vertices, at least one vertex, say  $A_1$ , is the only vertex of  $Z$  on the line  $A_1O$ . The line  $A_1O$  must be at the boundary of  $Z$  between vertices  $A_3$  and  $A_4$  since otherwise either  $A_1OA_3A_4A_5$  or  $A_1A_2A_3A_4O$  is a convex lattice 5-gon which by lemma 3.4.1 must contain a second

interior lattice point in  $K$ . Thus both  $A_1A_2A_3O$  and  $A_1OA_4A_5$  are convex lattice 4-gons with no point of  $\Lambda$  in their interiors. By lemma 3.4.1 each of these 4-gons has a pair of parallel edges. As these edges are either internal to  $Z$  or on the boundary of  $Z$ , they contain no points of  $\Lambda$  in their relative interior. Each 4-gon is therefore a parallelogram and so  $A_1O, A_2A_3$  and  $A_4A_5$  are adjacent parallel lattice lines. Let  $\bar{A}_1 \neq A_1$  be the lattice point on  $A_1O$  adjacent to  $O$ . Since there are no points of the lattice between the lines  $A_2A_3$  and  $A_4A_5$  other than those on  $A_1O$ , the lattice hexagon  $H = A_1A_2A_3\bar{A}_1A_4A_5$  contains only the lattice point  $O$  in its interior. By lemma 3.4.1(iii), this hexagon  $H$  is therefore an integral unimodular transform of  $H_0$ . Thus  $A_2OA_4$  and  $A_3OA_5$  are chords of  $H$ , and so chords of symmetry of  $K$  as required above.

### 3.8 Incentre, Circumcentre Results

We now deduce an analogue of Theorem 1.2.1, which stated that an admissible set with centre of gravity  $O$  has area at most  $4.5\det(\Lambda)$ . We show

Theorem 3.8.1 Let  $K$  be an admissible set. Then  $A(K) \leq 4.5\det(\Lambda)$  if either of the following conditions hold

- (i) the smallest homothet of any given symmetric convex set  $K_1$  which contains  $K$  is centred at  $O$ .
- (ii) a largest homothet of any given symmetric convex set  $K_2$  which is contained by  $K$  is centred at  $O$ .

In particular, when  $K_1$  or  $K_2$  is a circle, we can restate the theorem as,

Corollary 3.8.1 Let  $K$  be an admissible set. Then

$A(K) \leq 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$  if either of the following conditions hold

- (i)  $O$  is the circumcentre of  $K$ .
- (ii)  $O$  is an incentre of  $K$ .

Proof of Theorem 3.8.1 By Theorems 1.2.1 and 3.1.2, the result will follow if we can show that under either of the conditions (i) or (ii),  $K$  has either an extremal chord of symmetry, or that  $s(K) \geq 2$ . We show that this is so in the following two lemmas. With these lemmas, then, Theorem 3.8.1 is proved.

Lemma 3.8.2 Let  $K$  be a convex set in the plane which contains  $O$  as an interior point. We suppose that the smallest homothet of a given symmetric convex set  $K_1$  which contains  $K$  is centred at  $O$ . Then  $K$  has either an extremal chord of symmetry or has  $s(K) \geq 3$ .

Proof Without loss of generality, we suppose that  $K_1$  is a symmetric convex set containing  $K$ , centred at  $O$ , no smaller homothet of which (about any centre) contains  $K$ . In order to discuss the chords of  $K$  through  $O$ , we first show that the boundaries of  $K$  and  $K_1$ ,  $\partial K$  and  $\partial K_1$ , meet in at least three points forming a triangle containing  $O$ , or that  $K$  and  $K_1$  share an extremal chord of symmetry.

Plainly  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  is at least one point, for otherwise a smaller homothet of  $K_1$  centred at  $O$  will still contain  $K$ . If  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  is just one point  $P$ , we translate  $K_1$  a small distance away from  $P$ , orthogonal to a supporting line of  $K$

at  $P$ , to the set  $K'_1$  which still contains  $K$  and whose boundary does not meet  $\partial K$ . A smaller homothet of  $K'_1$  say  $K''_1$  will therefore contain  $K$ , and since the product of a homothet and translation is a homothet with different centre,  $K''_1$  is a smaller homothet of  $K_1$  which contains  $K$ . By our choice of  $K_1$  we deduce a contradiction. Therefore  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  is at least two points.

We now suppose that  $P$  and  $P'$  are points of  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  which are collinear with  $O$ . As  $K_1$  is  $O$ -symmetric, the chord  $POP'$  of  $K$  is a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . As  $K_1$  is  $O$ -symmetric,  $K_1$  has a pair of parallel supporting lines at  $P$  and  $P'$ , which since  $K \subseteq K_1$  are also supporting lines to  $K$  at  $P$  and  $P'$ . Thus  $K$  has an extremal chord of symmetry.

We next suppose that  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  has no pair of points collinear with  $O$ . We show that in this case there are three points  $P_1, P_2$  and  $P_3$  of  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  such that  $O$  is interior to the triangle  $P_1P_2P_3$ . Supposing to the contrary that  $O$  is not interior to any such triangle, we let  $P_1P_2$  be the common chord of  $K$  and  $K_1$  which passes closest to  $O$ . Hence the open arc of the boundary of  $K$  between  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ , to the side of  $P_1P_2$  containing  $O$ , contains no point of  $\partial K_1$  in its convex hull. Since  $K_1$  is centrally symmetric about  $O$ , the semitangents to  $K$  at  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ , to the side of  $P_1P_2$  containing  $O$ , are either parallel or meet at a point  $Q$  to the side of  $P_1P_2$  not containing  $O$ . Hence we can translate  $K_1$  to a set  $K'_1$  in the direction  $\vec{OQ}$  by a suitably small distance, so that  $\partial K'_1 \cap \partial K = \emptyset$ . That this intersection is empty is assured by our choice of  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  and by the fact that there are no

points of  $\partial K_1$  on the arc of  $\partial K$  from  $P_1$  to  $P_2$  which encloses  $O$ . Since a smaller homothet of  $K_1'$ , which is a smaller homothet of  $K_1$ , thus contains  $K$ , we deduce a contradiction against the choice of  $K_1$  above. Hence there are points  $P_1P_2P_3$  of  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  which form a triangle strictly containing  $O$ .

The three chords  $P_jOP_j'$ ,  $j=1,2,3$ , of  $K$  have the property that  $|OP_j| > |OP_j'|$ , since  $K \subset K_1$ , and since  $\partial K \cap \partial K_1$  has no pair of points collinear with  $O$ . Since  $O$  is an interior point of the triangle  $P_1P_2P_3$ , the six endpoints of these chords are given successively around  $\partial K$  by  $P_1P_3'P_2P_1'P_3P_2'$ . Since the boundary of  $K$  is continuous, between each of  $P_1$  and  $P_3'$ ,  $P_3'$  and  $P_2$  and  $P_2$  and  $P_1'$  lies the endpoint of a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . Hence  $s(K) \geq 3$ , and the lemma is proved.

Lemma 3.8.3 Let  $K$  be a convex set in the plane which contains  $O$  as an interior point. We suppose that a largest homothet of a given symmetric convex set  $K_2$  which is contained by  $K$  is centred at  $O$ . Then  $K$  has either an extremal chord of symmetry or has  $s(K) \geq 2$ .

Proof Without loss of generality, we suppose that  $K_2$  is a symmetric convex set contained in  $K$ , centred at  $O$  no smaller homothet of which (about any centre) is contained in  $K$ . As in Lemma 3.8.2, we can easily show that  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$  consists of at least two points.

We now suppose that points  $P$  and  $P'$  collinear with  $O$  belong to  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$ . As  $K_2$  is  $O$ -symmetric, the chord  $POP'$  is a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . A supporting line at  $P$  or  $P'$

to  $K_2$  need not be a supporting line to  $K$ ; this may happen when  $P$  or  $P'$  is a corner point of  $K_2$ . As we need only consider the case when  $K$  has no extremal chord of symmetry, we suppose that  $K$  has supporting lines  $\ell$  and  $\ell'$  at  $P$  and  $P'$  respectively, which meet in a point  $Q$ . Indeed we choose these lines to be the semitangents to  $K$  at  $P$  and  $P'$  to the side of  $POP'$  away from  $Q$ . If  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$  has no points on the side of  $POP'$  away from  $Q$ , we can translate  $K_2$  in the direction  $\vec{QO}$  by a sufficiently small distance that its translate  $K_2'$  has no points in common with  $\partial K$ . By our choice of  $\ell$  and  $\ell'$ , neither  $P$  nor  $P'$  lies on  $\partial K_2'$ . Since a larger homothet of  $K_2'$ , and so of  $K_2$ , is therefore contained in  $K$  we derive a contradiction against our choice of  $K_2$ . There is thus at least one point  $P_1$  of  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$  on the side of  $POP'$  away from  $Q$ .

Since  $\ell$  and  $\ell'$  meet, there are points  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ , arbitrarily close to  $P$  and  $P'$ , on the boundary of  $K$ , to the side of  $POP'$  containing  $Q$ , with the following property. The chord  $R_i O R_i'$  of  $K$  is divided by  $O$  such that  $|R_i O| < |O R_i'|$ , for  $i=1,2$ . Because  $K_2 \subset K$ , the chord  $P_1 O P_1'$  of  $K$  has the property that  $|P_1' O| \geq |O P_1|$ . As the boundary of the convex set  $K$  is continuous, between  $R_1$  and  $P_1'$ , (or possibly at  $P_1'$ ) there is an endpoint  $P_2$  of a chord of symmetry  $P_2 O P_2'$  of  $K$ . That is  $|P_2 O| = |O P_2'|$ . As  $POP'$  is also a chord of symmetry of  $K$ ,  $s(K) \geq 2$ , and the result follows.

We now can suppose that  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$  has no pair of points collinear with  $O$ . As in lemma 3.8.2, we can easily show that there are three points  $P_1 P_2 P_3$  of  $\partial K \cap \partial K_2$ , such that  $O$  is an interior point of the triangle  $P_1 P_2 P_3$ . The three chords

$P_i O P_i'$ ,  $i=1,2,3$  of  $K$  on which these points lie have the property that  $|OP_i| < |OP_i'|$ . As  $O$  lies in the interior of the triangle  $P_1 P_2 P_3$ , the endpoints of these chords are ordered cyclically  $P_1 P_3' P_2 P_1' P_3 P_2'$  about  $\partial K$ . By the continuity of the boundary of  $K$  there is between each of  $P_1$  and  $P_3'$ ,  $P_3'$  and  $P_2$  and  $P_2$  and  $P_1'$  the endpoint of a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . Thus  $s(K) \geq 3$  in this case, and the proof of the lemma is completed.

CHAPTER 4

Minkowski's Theorem with Other Measures of Symmetry

4.1 Introduction

Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in the plane having determinant  $\det(\Lambda)$ . As in Chapter 3 we say that the set  $K$  is *admissible* if it is a closed convex set in the plane with  $0$  the only point of  $\Lambda$  in its interior.

Definition 4.1.1 We define a *chord of areal symmetry* to be a chord through  $0$  which splits  $K$  into two regions of equal area. A chord through  $0$  equidistant from two parallel lines of support of  $K$  we call a *midchord of symmetry*, while we say that if the set  $K$  is invariant under reflection in a chord through  $0$ , then that chord is a *chord of reflective symmetry*. A *chord of perimeter symmetry* passes through  $0$  and partitions the boundary of  $K$  into two arcs of equal length. A diametral chord of perimeter symmetry is such a chord at whose endpoints  $K$  has lines of support perpendicular to the chord. We denote the number of each of these types of chords by  $a(K)$ ,  $m(K)$ ,  $r(K)$ ,  $p(K)$  and  $dp(K)$  respectively. Additionally, if an admissible set  $K$  is invariant under a rotation centred at  $0$  of  $2\pi/n$  radians, we let  $t(K) = n$ , where  $n$  is the largest such integer, or  $\infty$  if  $K$  is fixed under a rotation by an irrational multiple of  $\pi$ , (in which case  $K$  is simply a circular disc).

Definition 4.1.2 We say that an integer valued function (possibly infinite)  $f(K)$ , defined on the set of admissible sets, is an *M-function*, when

(i)  $f(K) > 1$  and  $f(K) \neq 3$  imply that  $A(K) \leq 4 \det(\Lambda)$ ,  
and (ii)  $f(K) = 3$  implies that  $A(K) \leq 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$ .

In Chapter 3, we showed that  $s(K)$  is an *M-function*.

We show

Theorem 4.1.1 The function  $a(K)$  is an *M-function*.

Theorem 4.1.2 The function  $m(K)$  is an *M-function*.

Theorem 4.1.3 The function  $r(K)$  is an *M-function*, and  $r(K) = 3$   
only if adjacent chords of reflective symmetry form angles of  $\pi/3$ .

Theorem 4.1.4 The function  $t(K)$  is an *M-function*.

We show that Theorems 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 give the best possible bounds on  $A(K)$  for all  $\Lambda$  and all values of  $a(K)$  and  $m(K)$ . Each of Theorems 4.1.3, 4.1.4 gives the best possible bound on  $A(K)$  for at least one lattice when  $r(K)$ ,  $t(K)$  equals 2, 3, 4 or 6. Under a linear transformation of  $K$  and  $\Lambda$ , the values of  $A(K)/\det(\Lambda)$ ,  $a(K)$  and  $m(K)$  are invariant. It suffices to show Theorems 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 are best possible with respect to any one lattice.

In the hexagonal lattice generated by  $a = (2, 0)$  and  $b = (1, \sqrt{3})$ , the equilateral triangle  $T$ , with vertices  $v_1 = -a + 2b$ ,  $v_2 = -b + 2a$  and  $v_3 = -b - a$  has area  $4.5\det(\Lambda)$ . Each chord through the origin  $0$  and a vertex of  $T$  is simultaneously a chord of areal symmetry, a midchord of symmetry, a chord of reflective symmetry and a diametral chord of perimeter symmetry. Also, as  $T$  is invariant under a rotation of  $2\pi/3$  about  $0$ ,

$t(T) = 3$ . Hence the bound of  $4.5\det(\Lambda)$  can be attained in each of the above theorems. In the same lattice, the regular hexagon  $H$  with vertices  $\pm 2/3v_1, \pm 2/3v_2, \pm 2/3v_3$ , has area  $4\det(\Lambda)$ , and  $r(H) = t(H) = dp(H) = 6$ ,  $a(H) = m(H) = \infty$ . We obtain two further critical examples for Theorems 4.1.3, 4.1.4 in the integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$ . Let  $U$  be the square with vertices  $(\pm 1, \pm 1)$ , and let  $R$  be the rectangle with vertices  $\pm(3/2, -1/2), \pm(1/2, -3/2)$ . Only the four chords of  $U$  parallel to and midway between the coordinate axes are chords of reflective symmetry for  $U$ , while only the chords midway between the axes are chords of reflective symmetry for  $R$ . As  $A(U) = A(R) = 4 = 4\det(\Lambda_0)$  we have shown theorem 4.1.3 to be best possible, in four instances. Since  $t(U) = 4$  and  $t(R) = 2$ , we have also shown theorem 4.1.4 to be best possible, in these same four instances.

The argument that Theorem 4.1.1 is best possible when  $a(K)$  is finite is a little more complicated. Let  $\text{int } U$  denote the interior of  $U$ , and let  $C \subseteq \text{int } U$  be a closed, convex, proper  $2n$ -gon ( $n \geq 2$ ) which is centrally symmetric about  $0$ . Further, let the edges of  $C$  be labelled  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_{2n}$  in a clockwise direction, and let  $e_1$  be parallel to the  $x$ -axis and bisected by the positive  $y$ -axis. For given small  $\eta > 0$ , we may assume that  $A(C) \geq A(U) - \eta$ . We now modify to produce a set  $C'$  for which  $C \subseteq C' \subseteq U$  and  $a(C') = n$ .

First suppose that  $n$  is even. To edge  $e_1$ , add a small scalene triangle  $\tau$  for which the area lying in the halfplane  $x \leq 0$  exceeds the area lying in  $x \geq 0$  by  $\epsilon/2$  ( $\epsilon > 0$ ). To the edge  $e_{n+1}$ , add the mirror image of  $\tau$  in the  $x$ -axis. To the edges

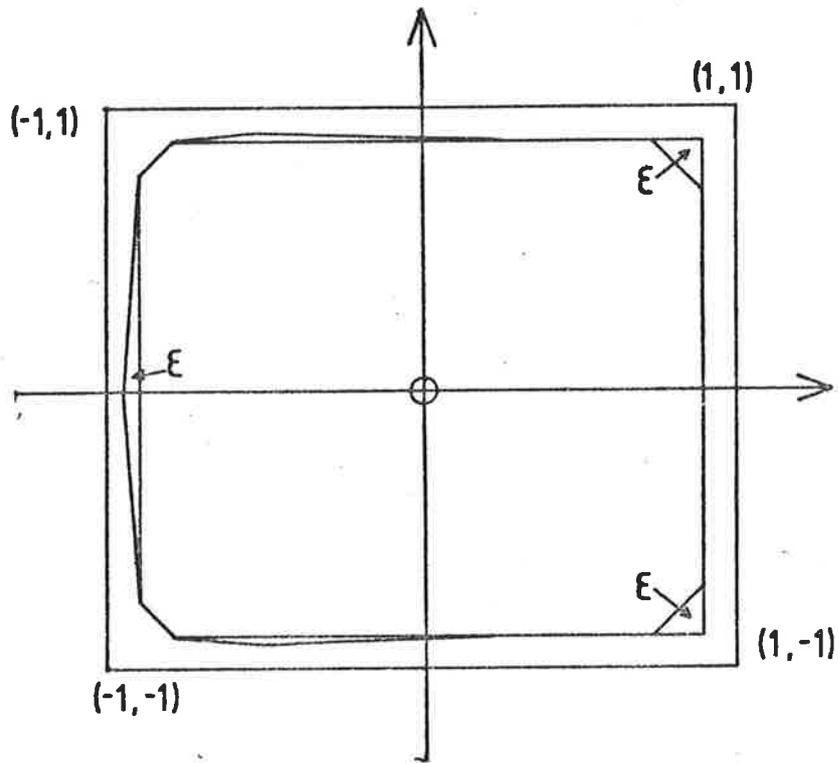


FIGURE 4.1

$$e_2, e_4, \dots, e_n, e_{n+3}, e_{n+5}, \dots, e_{2n-1}$$

add a small region of area  $\varepsilon$ . (Figure 4.1, Opposite, shows the case  $n = 4$ .) By choosing  $\varepsilon$  sufficiently small we can ensure that the resulting set  $C'$  is still convex,  $C' \subseteq U$ , and  $A(U) - \eta < A(C') < 4\varepsilon = A(U)$ . Also,  $C'$  has precisely  $n$  chords of areal symmetry, namely, the chord along the  $y$ -axis, and the  $n/2 + (n/2 - 1)$  chords which bisect the added regions on edges other than  $e_1$  and  $e_{n+1}$ .

For odd  $n$ , we need not isolate a pair of edges  $e_1$  and  $e_{n+1}$  for special treatment as in the above case for even  $n$ . Instead, add to each of the edges  $e_2, e_4, \dots, e_{2n}$  a region of area  $\varepsilon > 0$ , sufficiently small to ensure that the resulting set  $C' \subseteq U$  is still convex. The chords of areal symmetry of  $C'$  are precisely the  $n$  chords passing through  $0$  which bisect the area of one of these added regions.

Finally, we argue that Theorem 4.1.2 is best possible when  $m(K)$  is finite. Let  $C \subseteq \text{int } U$  be specified as above. We now modify  $C$  to produce a set  $C''$  for which  $C \subseteq C'' \subseteq U$  and  $m(C'') = n$ . To each of the edges  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  we add a region of small positive area, so that the resulting set  $C''$  is convex,  $C'' \subseteq \text{int } U$ , and so that each vertex of  $C$  is a boundary point of  $C''$ . We choose the added regions, so that  $C''$  has a unique supporting line at each of the  $n-1$  vertices incident with  $e_2, \dots, e_{n-1}$ , and a unique pair of parallel supporting lines at the pair of opposite vertices incident with  $e_1$  and  $e_n$ . This latter pair of parallel supporting lines, together with the  $n-1$  unique pairs of parallel supporting lines at the other pairs of opposite vertices, lie parallel to  $n$  midchords of symmetry through  $0$ .

We show that there are no other midchords of symmetry. In each pair of parallel supporting lines of  $C''$ , one line must meet one of the edges  $e_{n+1}, \dots, e_{2n}$ , and hence be incident with a vertex of  $C''$ . Therefore any pair of parallel supporting lines equidistant from  $O$  must meet  $C''$  at a pair of opposite vertices of  $C''$ , and so must be one of the  $n$  unique such pairs counted above. As  $A(C'') > A(C) \geq A(U) - \eta = 4\det(\Lambda) - \eta$ , the bound of Theorem 4.1.2 cannot be improved.

The example chosen above suggests perhaps that  $A(K) = 4\det(\Lambda)$  is impossible when  $m(K)$  is finite and not one or three. As a counter-example, the trapezium  $Z$  with vertices  $(-1, 2)$ ,  $(2, -1)$ ,  $(-1, 0)$  and  $(0, -1)$  is admissible with respect to  $\Lambda_0$ , but  $A(Z) = 4\det(\Lambda_0)$ , and  $m(Z) = 2$ .

#### 4.2 Area Symmetry

Proof of Theorem 4.1.1 Theorems 1.2.7 and 1.2.8 show that an admissible set  $K$  has area  $A(K) \leq 4\det(\Lambda)$  whenever

- (1) a chord of symmetry of  $K$  is also a chord of areal symmetry of  $K$ , or
- (2)  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at the endpoints of a chord of symmetry (that is,  $K$  has an *extremal* chord of symmetry, section 3.1).

Let  $A_R(\theta)$  be the area of that part of an admissible set  $K$  to the right of a directed chord  $c(\theta) = \overrightarrow{P'O'P}$  of  $K$ , which makes an angle  $\angle POX = \theta$  ( $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$ ) with the positive  $x$ -axis.

Similarly, let  $A_L(\theta)$  be the area of that part of  $K$  to the left of  $c(\theta)$ . We show that  $A_R(\theta)$  is a differentiable function of  $\theta$ . The areas of the two almost triangular regions of  $K$  which lie between the chords  $c(\theta)$  and  $c(\theta+d\theta)$  are well

approximated by  $\frac{1}{2}(OP)^2 d\theta$  and  $\frac{1}{2}(OP')^2 d\theta$ . Then

$$\frac{d}{d\theta}(A_R(\theta)) = \lim_{d\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\frac{1}{2}(OP)^2 d\theta - \frac{1}{2}(OP')^2 d\theta}{d\theta} = \frac{1}{2}[(OP)^2 - (OP')^2].$$

The function  $d_A(\theta) = A_R(\theta) - A_L(\theta) = 2A_R(\theta) - A(K)$  is therefore differentiable with respect to  $\theta$ , and has derivative

$$d'_A(\theta) = 2A'_R(\theta) = (OP)^2 - (OP')^2.$$

Hence we can identify a zero of  $d_A(\theta)$  with a chord of areal symmetry of  $K$ , and a zero of its derivative  $d'_A(\theta)$  with a chord of symmetry of  $K$ .

We now show that simplifying assumptions about the function  $d_A(\theta)$  can be made. Suppose that at some angle  $\theta_0$ ,  $d'_A(\theta_0) = 0$  but  $d_A(\theta_0)$  is not an extremum. Without loss of generality assume that  $d'_A(\theta) \geq 0$  for  $\theta$  in a neighbourhood  $N(\theta_0, \epsilon)$  about  $\theta_0$ . Hence for  $\theta \in N(\theta_0, \epsilon)$ ,  $d(\theta) = P'OP$  has the property that the segment  $OP$  is no shorter than  $OP'$ . Therefore, a supporting line to  $K$  at the endpoint  $P_0$  of  $c(\theta_0) = P'_0OP_0$ , together with a parallel line through  $P'_0$  form a pair of parallel supporting lines at the endpoints of  $c(\theta_0)$ , a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . Theorem 1.2.8 states that  $A(K) \leq 4$  in this case.

If  $c(\theta_1)$  is both a chord of areal symmetry of  $K$  and a chord of symmetry of  $K$ , Theorem 1.2.7 gives that  $A(K) \leq 4$ . A particular case of this occurs when  $A(K)$  is infinite, as the infinite set of zeros of  $d_A(\theta)$  must have an accumulation point  $\theta_1 \in [0, \pi)$ . By continuity  $\theta_1$  is also a zero of  $d'_A(\theta)$ , and indeed must also be a zero of its derivative  $d''_A(\theta)$ .

We may therefore assume that  $d'_A(\theta) = 0$  only at extrema of  $d'_A(\theta)$ , and only when  $d_A(\theta) \neq 0$ . By applying Rolle's theorem to  $d'_A(\theta)$ , we deduce that  $d'_A(\theta)$  has an odd, or infinite, number of zeros between each pair of successive zeros of  $d_A(\theta)$ . The number of pairs of successive zeros of  $d_A(\theta)$  equals  $a(K)$ , for we identify the last and first zero on  $[0, \pi)$  as such a pair. The value of  $s(K)$  is therefore either infinite, or  $a(K) + 2t$ , where  $t$  is a nonnegative integer. Theorem 4.1.1 now follows as a simple corollary of the result proved in Chapter 3, that  $s(K)$  is an *M-function*.

#### 4.3 Midchord Symmetry

Proof of Theorem 4.1.2 Let  $K$  be an admissible set having  $m(K)$  midchords of symmetry. Hence  $K$  is a subset of the  $2(m(K))$ -gon,  $P$ , centrally symmetric about  $O$ , formed from those pairs of parallel supports of  $K$  parallel to the midchords. When  $m(K)$  is infinite, we simply regard some of the sides of this polygon  $P$  to have lengths equal to or approaching zero. Since the sides of  $P$  are all lines of support of  $K$ ,  $K$  contains a point on each side of  $P$ . Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be two opposite sides of  $P$ , containing points  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  of  $K$  respectively. Let  $R_3$  and  $R_4$  be points such that  $R_1R_3$  and  $R_2R_4$  are chords of  $K$  through  $O$ . The midpoint of the chord  $R_1OR_3$  lies no further from  $S_1$  than  $S_2$ , since  $R_3 \in K$  and  $S_2$  bounds  $K$ , and so the distance  $|R_1O| \geq |OR_3|$ . Similarly the midpoint of  $R_1OR_4$  lies no further from  $S_2$  than  $S_1$ , and so  $|R_4O| \leq |OR_2|$ . Indeed, if equality holds in either of the above expressions,  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are parallel supports of  $K$  at the endpoints of a chord of symmetry of  $K$ , and we can deduce that

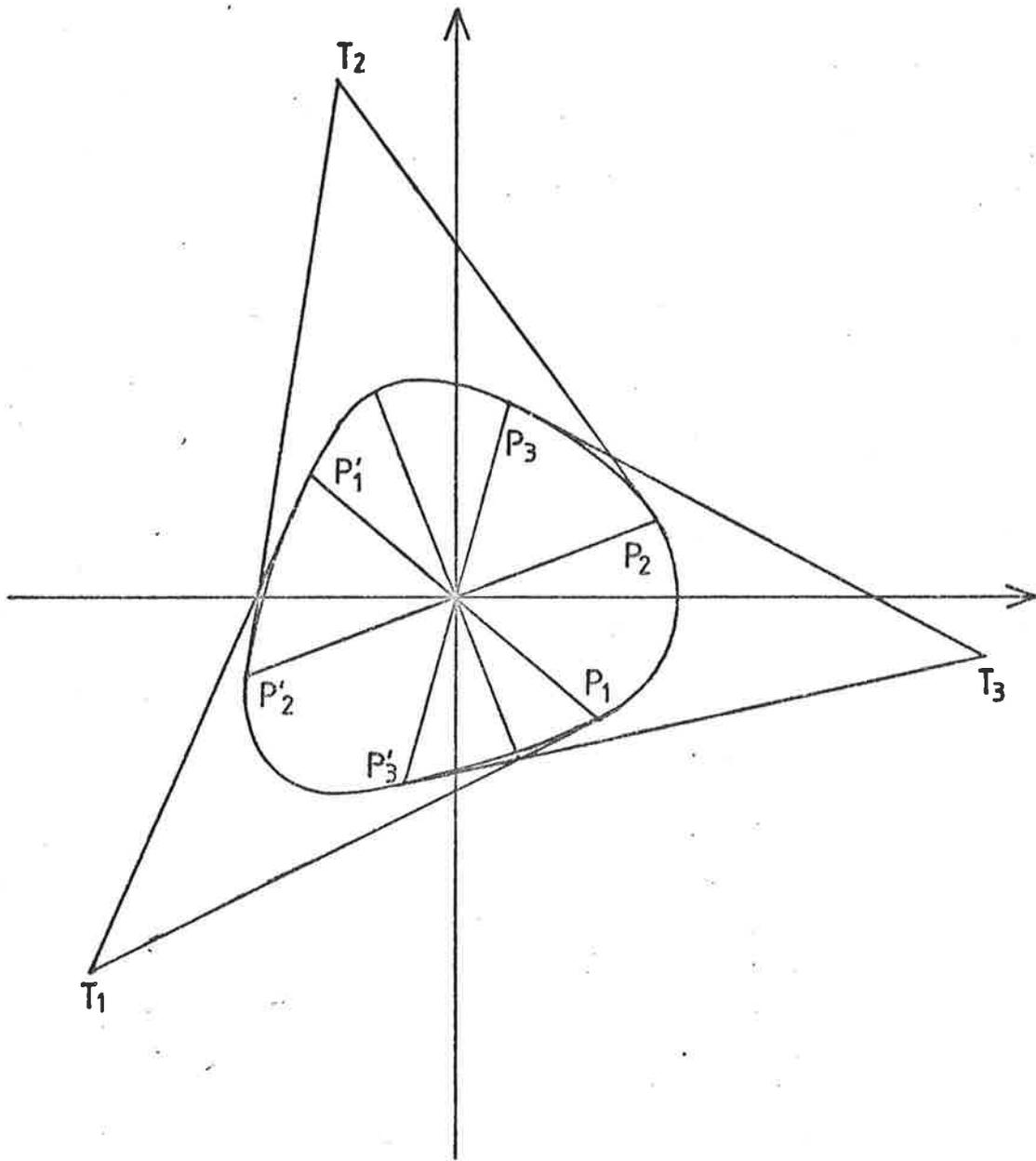


FIGURE 4.2

$A(K) \leq 4\det(\Lambda)$  by Scott's Theorem 1.2.8. Otherwise, by the continuity of the boundary of  $K$ , there must exist a chord of  $K$ ,  $R_5OR_6$  between the chords  $R_1OR_3$  and  $R_4OR_2$ , such that  $|R_5O| = |OR_6|$ . Hence we may assume  $K$  has at least one chord of symmetry associated exclusively with each of its midchords, and so  $s(K) \geq m(K)$ . Since  $s(K)$  is an *M-function*, by Theorems 3.1.1, 3.1.2 and 3.1.3, Theorem 4.1.2 now follows with the exception of the case  $m(K) = 2$  and  $s(K) = 3$ . We demonstrate that this situation can never arise, by showing that if an admissible set  $K$  has  $s(K) = 3$  and  $A(K) > 4\det(\Lambda)$ , then  $m(K) > 2$ .

Suppose  $K$  is an admissible set, with  $s(K) = 3$  and  $A(K) > 4\det(\Lambda)$ . Since  $A(K) > 4\det(\Lambda)$ , we may assume without loss of generality that the supporting lines at the endpoints of the three chords of symmetry meet as in Figure 4.2. This same assumption is justified in section 3.3 in the proof of Theorem 3.1.2, from which we adopt the notation  $P_iOP'_i, T_i, i \in \{1,2,3\}$  for the chords of symmetry and the intersections of the supporting lines at their endpoints. The chord midway between the two parallel supporting lines of  $K$ , parallel to  $T_1P_1$ , in Figure 4.2 lies to the same side of  $O$  as  $P'_1$ , since no support parallel to  $T_1P_1$  passes through  $P'_1$ . Similarly the chord midway between two parallel supporting lines of  $K$ , parallel to  $T_1P'_1$  lies to the same side of  $O$  as  $P_1$ . Hence, as the signed distance between  $O$  and a chord of  $K$  midway between parallel supports of  $K$  at angle  $\theta$  with the  $x$ -axis is a continuous function of  $\theta$ , there is a midchord of symmetry of  $K$ , parallel to  $T_1X$ , where  $X$  lies on the chord  $P_1OP'_1$ . Similarly, midchords of symmetry of  $K$  are generated parallel to  $T_2Y$  and  $T_3Z$ , where

$Y \in P_2OP_2'$  and  $Z \in P_3OP_3'$ . That the directions of  $T_1X$ ,  $T_2Y$ , and  $T_3Z$  are distinct is easily confirmed from the configuration shown in Figure 4.2, opposite. Hence  $m(K) \geq 3$ , and the proof is complete.

#### 4.4 Reflection/Rotation Symmetry

Proofs of Theorems 4.1.3 and 4.1.4 Every chord of reflective symmetry is also clearly a chord of areal symmetry of  $K$ . Hence, by Theorem 4.1.1, when  $r(K) > 3$ , or when  $r(K)$  is infinite, we deduce that  $A(K) \leq 4\det(\Lambda)$ .

If  $r(K) = 2$ , the two chords of reflective symmetry must form an angle of  $\pi/2$ , for otherwise the reflection of one in the other forms a third distinct chord of reflective symmetry. In this case any further chords of areal symmetry give rise to an even number of chords of areal symmetry, by reflection in the two perpendicular chords of reflective symmetry. Hence the number of chords of areal symmetry is even or infinite, and so Theorem 4.1.1 implies that  $A(K) \leq 4\det(\Lambda)$ . If  $r(K) = 3$ , the chords must form angles of  $\pi/3$ , else their images in each other form further chords of reflective symmetry. By Theorem 4.1.1 we thus complete the proof of Theorem 4.1.3.

The set  $K$  is centrally symmetric about  $O$  if  $t(K)$  is a multiple of 2, for then  $K$  is invariant under a halfturn about  $O$ . All admissible sets have at least one chord of symmetry as we noted in Chapter 3. The images of any such chord under the  $t(K)$  rotations belonging to the symmetry group of  $K$  are also chords of symmetry of  $K$ . Hence the number of chords of symmetry,  $s(K)$  is no less than  $t(K)$ . By Theorems 3.1.1, 3.1.2 and 3.1.3 we thus complete the proof of Theorem 4.1.4.

#### 4.5 Perimeter Symmetry

Let  $K$  be an admissible set with  $dp(K) > 1$ . Let  $c(\alpha)$  and  $c(\alpha+\beta)$  be two diametral chords of perimeter symmetry of  $K$ , separated by an angle  $\beta \in (0, \pi)$ . As in previous arguments, we denote by  $\bar{K}$  the reflection of  $K$  in  $O$ , and describe in polar form by functions  $a_1(\theta)$  and  $a_2(\theta)$ ,  $\theta \in [\alpha, \alpha+\beta]$  the arcs of  $K$  and  $\bar{K}$  respectively between  $c(\alpha)$  and  $c(\alpha+\beta)$ . Since these chords are chords of perimeter symmetry of  $K$  the arcs  $a_1(\theta)$  and  $a_2(\theta)$  have the same length. As the chords are also diametral the arcs have supporting lines at their endpoints orthogonal to  $c(\alpha)$  and  $c(\alpha+\beta)$  respectively. We first show

Lemma 4.5.1 For arcs  $a_1(\theta)$  and  $a_2(\theta)$  as described above, there is at least one angle  $\gamma \in (\alpha, \alpha+\beta)$  such that  $a_1(\gamma) = a_2(\gamma)$ .

Proof With no loss of generality, rotating the coordinate axes if necessary, we assume that  $\alpha = 0$ . To the contrary we suppose there is no such angle  $\gamma$ . By the symmetry of properties of  $a_1(\theta)$  and  $a_2(\theta)$ , we assume without loss of generality that  $a_1(\theta) < a_2(\theta)$  for all  $\theta \in (0, \beta)$ . We reflect the two arcs about axis  $c(\beta)$ , and so extend their definition to  $\theta \in [0, 2\beta]$ . Hence  $a_i(2\beta-\delta) = a_i(\delta)$  for any  $\delta \in [0, \beta]$  and  $i=1, 2$ . Since  $c(\beta)$  is a diametral chord, the extended arc  $a_i(\theta)$  still has a supporting line at the endpoint of  $c(\beta)$ , namely that orthogonal to this chord.

The perimeter of a convex set is a strictly increasing function with respect to set inclusion. A proof of this fact can be found in Yaglom and Bottyanski [17], p. 15. Our argument is easy in the following case. We suppose that  $\beta$  divides  $\pi$ , and we extend

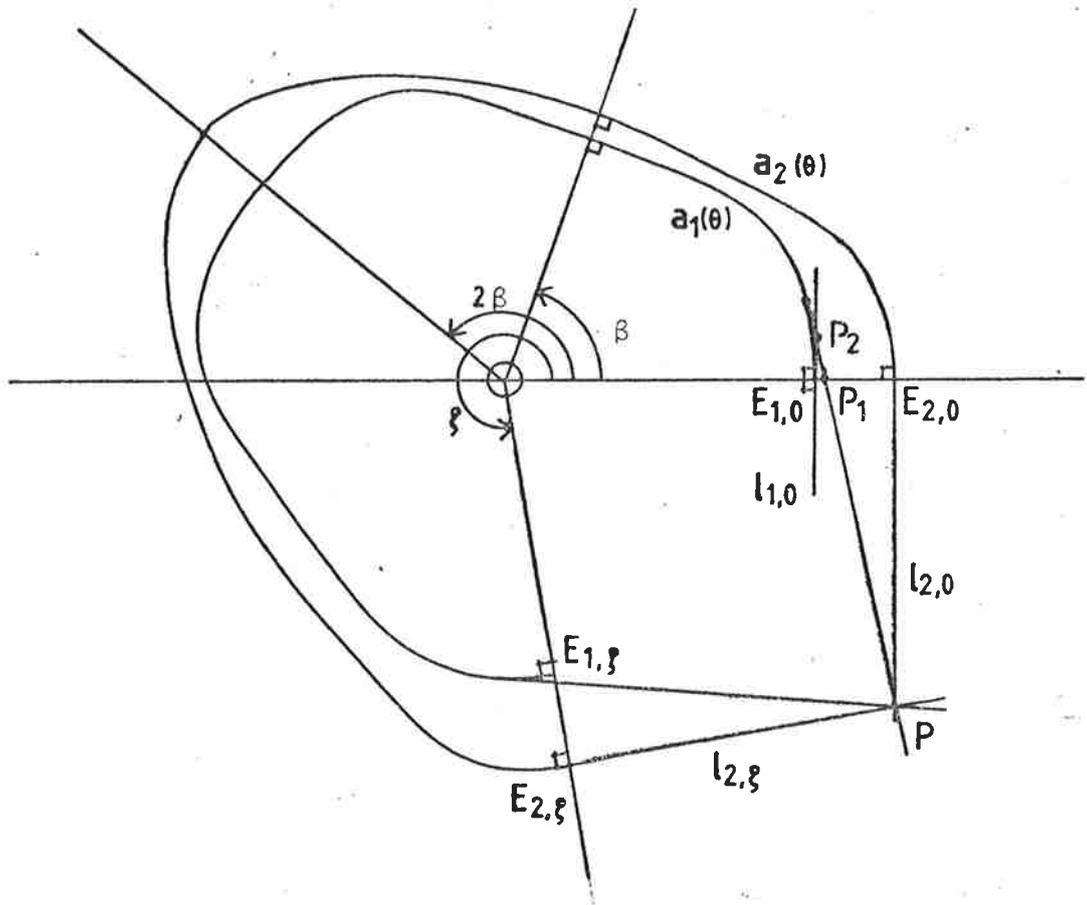


FIGURE 4.3

our definitions of  $a_i(\theta)$ ,  $i=1,2$ , to  $\theta \in [0,2\pi]$  by making each  $a_i(\theta)$  periodic with period  $2\beta$ . Since  $a_i(2\beta) = a_i(0)$  the curve so represented is closed for  $i=1,2$ , and since the same number of units of the original arcs  $a_i(\theta)$  are used in each instance, both of these curves have the same length. Finally, since  $a_i(\theta)$  bounds a convex set for  $\theta \in (0,\beta)$ , namely  $K$  or  $\bar{K}$ , at each point in this range a supporting line can be drawn to the curve  $a_i(\theta)$ . By reflecting in  $c(\beta)$  and/or then a rotation by a multiple of  $2\beta$ , this set of supporting lines is transformed to a set of supporting lines for the closed arc  $a_i(\theta)$ , which therefore bounds a convex set,  $L_i$ . Since  $a_1(\theta) < a_2(\theta)$  for  $\theta \in (0,\beta)$ , it follows that  $L_1 \subset L_2$ . However as the perimeters of  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are equal, we have contradicted the first statement of this paragraph, and so proved the result in this simple case.

Suppose now that  $\pi$  is not an integral multiple of  $B$ . The following construction is illustrated in Figure 4.3, opposite. We can as above extend the definition of  $a_i(\theta)$ , so that  $a_i(\theta)$  is defined for  $\theta \in (0,\xi)$ , where  $\xi > \pi$ , and so that the curves  $a_i(\theta)$ , of equal length, have supporting lines at all points, and at their endpoints  $E_{i,0}$  and  $E_{i,\xi}$  have supporting lines  $\ell_{i,0}$  and  $\ell_{i,\xi}$  orthogonal to the chords  $c(0)$  and  $c(\xi)$  respectively, for  $i=1,2$ . Let  $P$  denote the point of intersection of lines  $\ell_{2,0}$  and  $\ell_{2,\xi}$ , and let the set  $L_i$  be the convex hull of  $P$  and the points of curve  $a_i(\theta)$ ,  $\theta \in (0,\xi)$ ,  $i=1,2$ . By our construction each set  $L_i$  is symmetric about the line  $OP$ . We now show that the perimeter of  $L_1$  is no less than that of  $L_2$ , which will contradict the fact that  $L_1$  is contained in  $L_2$ . Since  $c(0)$  is a diametral chord of  $K$ ,  $\ell_{2,0}$  is orthogonal to  $c(0)$  and so the length

$E_{2,0}P$  is no greater than the length from  $P$  to the point  $P_1$ , the intersection of  $c(0)$  and the boundary of  $L_1$ . Indeed, this length is strictly less unless  $P_1 = E_{2,0}$ . The length of the boundary of  $L_1$  from  $c(0)$  to  $c(\xi/2)$  is made up from some of the arc  $a_1(\theta)$  and a segment (of length 0 only if  $P_1 = E_{2,0}$ ) of the supporting line of the curve  $a_1(\theta)$  through  $P_1$ . Let  $P_2$  be the intersection of this supporting line and the line  $\ell_{1,0}$ . The length  $P_2P_1$  is no less than length  $P_2E_{1,0}$ , since  $\ell_{1,0}$  is orthogonal to  $c(0)$ . Therefore the length of the boundary of  $L_1$  from  $c(0)$  to  $c(\xi/2)$  is no less than the length of boundary of  $L_1$ , with  $P_2E_{1,0}$  replacing  $P_2P_1$ . This second length is however, no less than the length of  $a_1(\theta)$  between  $c(0)$  and  $c(\xi/2)$ , since the convex hull of  $a_1(\theta)$ ,  $\theta \in (0, \xi/2)$ , and the point  $0$  is contained in the convex hull of  $0$  with the above curve. By symmetry then the perimeter of  $L_2$  is no less than that of  $L_1$ , and by construction  $L_1 \subset L_2$ . A contradiction thus exists unless  $L_1 = L_2$  in which case the point  $P_1$  is  $E_{1,0}$  and so  $a_1(\theta) = a_2(\theta)$  for  $\theta \in (0, \xi)$ , in contradiction to the above.

We are now in a position to prove that  $dp(\theta)$  is almost an  $M$ -function. We can prove

Theorem 4.5.2 Let  $K$  be an admissible set having  $dp(K)$  diametral chords of perimeter symmetry. Then, if  $dp(K) > 1$ ,  $A(K) \leq 4.5 \det(\Lambda)$  and if  $dp(K) > 3$ ,  $A(K) \leq 4 \det(\Lambda)$ .

Proof By lemma 4.5.1 there lies a chord of symmetry of  $K$  strictly between any two diametral chords of perimeter symmetry of  $K$ . Hence  $s(K) \geq dp(K)$ . The result follows as a trivial

consequence of Theorems 3.1.1, 3.1.2 and 3.1.3.  $\square$

It is interesting to note that Theorem 4.5.2 gives the best possible bound on  $A(K)$  for at least one lattice when  $dp(K) = 2, 3, 4$  and  $6$ . In section 4.1 we noted examples of this when  $dp(K) = 3, 4$  and  $6$ . We denote by  $T'$  the convex set formed by modifying the equilateral triangle  $T$  of section 4.1 by removing from the triangle at each of two of its vertices, an equilateral triangle of side length  $\epsilon$ , and at the third vertex a right angled triangle, with base angle  $\pi/3$  and base length  $\epsilon/(3-\sqrt{3})$ . The perimeter of  $T'$  is  $3\epsilon$  less than the perimeter of  $T$ , as it is reduced by  $\epsilon$  at each corner. The set  $T'$  is admissible, and for small  $\epsilon$  has just three chords of perimeter symmetry, as had  $T$ . The two chords of  $T'$ , lying on the medians of  $T$ , which have an endpoint on the side of one of the two small equilateral triangles removed from  $T$ , are clearly diametral chords of perimeter symmetry. The third chord of perimeter symmetry of  $T'$  lies close to the third median line of  $T$ , but is not diametral since the altitude of the removed right triangle, an edge of  $T'$ , lies at approximately  $\pi/3$  to this chord and contains in its interior one endpoint of the chord. Hence  $dp(T') = 2$ , and since  $A(T')$  is arbitrarily close to  $4.5\det(\Lambda)$ , the result 4.5.2 is again best possible in this case.

Our results on diametral chords of perimeter symmetry follow from Lemma 4.5.1. It is not true that between any two chords of perimeter symmetry of an admissible set there is always a chord of symmetry of the set. However, I have yet to find a set which contradicts the following conjecture.

Conjecture 4.5.3 The function  $p(K)$  is an  $M$ -function.

CHAPTER 5

The Minkowski-Vander Corput Theorem  
with Relaxed Symmetry Conditions

5.1 Introduction and Statement of Results

Definition 5.1.1 Let  $\Lambda$  be a lattice in the plane with determinant  $\det(\Lambda)$ . We say that a closed convex set in the plane, which contains  $0$  as an interior point, is *t-admissible* if  $K$  contains at most  $t$  lattice points besides  $0$  in its interior.

Definition 5.1.2 A *chord of symmetry* of  $K$  is a chord of  $K$  through  $0$  bisected by  $0$ . An *extremal chord of symmetry* of  $K$  has, in addition, parallel supporting lines at its endpoints.

In this chapter, we let  $s(K)$  denote the number of chords of symmetry of a  $t$ -admissible set  $K$ . We establish the following results, which extend theorems 3.1.1, 3.1.2 and 3.1.3.

Theorem 5.1.1 If  $s(K)$  is even or infinite,  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)\det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 5.1.2 If  $s(K) > 1$  and  $t \leq 3$  then  $A(K) \leq (2(t+2) + (2(t+1))^{-1})\det(\Lambda)$ .

Theorem 5.1.3 If  $s(K) > 3$  and  $t \leq 3$  then  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)\det(\Lambda)$ .

As in Chapter 3, since  $s(K)$  and  $A(K)/\det(\Lambda)$  are invariant under a linear transformation of  $K$  and  $\Lambda$ , we may suppose that  $\Lambda$  is the integral lattice  $\Lambda_0$ . Since  $\det(\Lambda_0) = 1$  we delete all further reference to  $\det(\Lambda)$  in this chapter.

We show that each of the above Theorems gives the best possible bound on  $A(K)$ . Let  $T_1$  be the convex hull of points  $(-1,-1)$ ,  $(-1,4)$  and  $(1.5,-1)$ . This triangle is 1-admissible and has only three chords of symmetry, passing through  $(1,0)$ ,  $(.5,1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  respectively. As  $A(T_1) = 6\frac{1}{4}$ , Theorem 5.1.2 is best possible for  $t=1$ . The triangle  $T_2$  with vertices  $(-1,-1)$ ,  $(-1,6)$  and  $(1\frac{1}{3},-1)$  similarly has  $s(T_2) = 3$  and area  $8\frac{1}{6}$ , while  $T_3$  with vertices  $(-1,-1)$ ,  $(-1,8)$  and  $(1\frac{1}{4},-1)$  is best possible for  $t=3$ .

Examples of sets demonstrating that Theorems 5.1.1 and 5.1.3 are best possible can be constructed similarly to those constructed in section 3.1 by approximating rectangles of the appropriate extreme area with sides parallel to the principal lattice directions, and with width 2.

## 5.2 Proof of Theorem 5.1.1

This proof is in essence identical to the proof of theorem 3.1.1. If all the chords of  $K$  which pass through  $0$  are chords of symmetry of  $K$ , then  $K$  is 0-symmetric. As  $K$  is  $t$ -admissible and 0-symmetric it follows that  $t$  is even, and that  $K$  does not contain  $t/2+1$  pairs of lattice points besides  $0$ . Now the contrapositive statement of Theorem 1.1.5 implies that  $A(K) \leq 4(t/2+1) = 2(t+2)$ .

We may thus assume there is a chord of  $K$ ,  $P_0OP'_0$  which is not a chord of symmetry of  $K$ . We denote each chord  $POP'$  by the label  $c(\theta)$ , where  $\theta$  is the angle  $P_0OP$ ,  $\theta \in [0,\pi]$ . We let  $d(\theta) = |P_0O|^2 - |OP'|^2$ , and note that  $d(0) = -d(\pi) \neq 0$ , while  $d(\theta)$  has a zero exactly when  $c(\theta)$  is a chord of symmetry of  $K$ .

If  $s(K)$  is even,  $d(\theta)$  has a zero  $\theta_*$  corresponding to a local extremum of  $d(\theta)$ , and so, as in the proof of 3.1.1, we can deduce that  $c(\theta_*)$  is an extremal chord of symmetry of  $K$ . Since  $K$  does not contain  $t+1$  lattice points besides  $0$ , the contrapositive statement of Theorem 1.2.8 implies that  $A(K) \leq 2((t+1)+1) = 2(t+1)$ . If  $s(K)$  is infinite, the argument given in the proof of 3.1.1 shows that  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at the endpoints of any chord of symmetry  $c(\theta)$  corresponding to a point of accumulation of the zeros of  $d(\theta)$ . By again using the contrapositive statement of Theorem 1.2.8, we deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

Corollary 5.2.1 If  $d(\theta)$  has a zero at which  $d(\theta)$  is an extremum, then  $c(\theta)$  is an extremal chord of symmetry, and  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

### 5.3 Preliminary Results Needed in the Proof of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3

Unfortunately the result of Scott, Theorem 1.2.5 which led to a rapid proof of Theorem 3.1.2, is of no help in proving Theorem 5.1.2.

Consequently we shall prove this result using the machinery of the proof of Theorem 3.1.3, that is by transforming the set and then using the properties of lattice polygons. It is necessary to restate and extend several of the lemmas used in Chapter 3 to suit our needs in this chapter. We prove

Lemma 5.3.1 Let  $(K_i)$  be a sequence of admissible convex sets such that  $K_i \rightarrow K$  in the Hausdorff metric. Suppose that for all  $i$ ,  $s(K_i) = k$ , an odd number, and also that  $K_i$  has no extremal

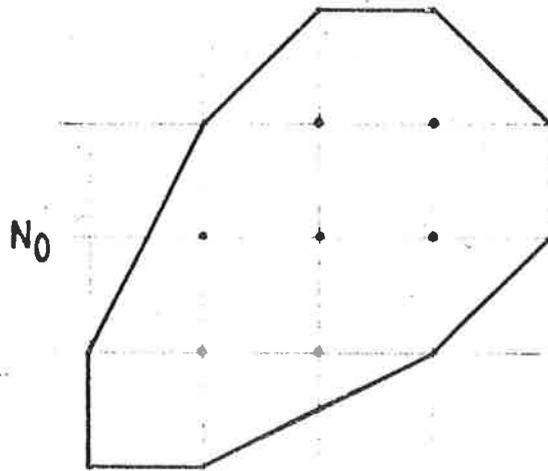
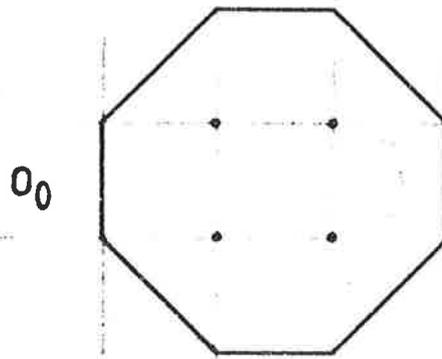
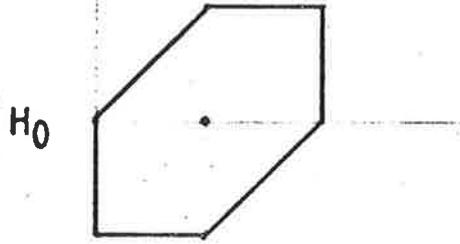


FIGURE 5.1

chord of symmetry. Then either

- (i)  $s(K) = k$ , and  $K$  has no extremal chord of symmetry,
- or (ii)  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

Proof The proof of lemma 3.5.1 applies. It is necessary only to replace the references to results 3.1.1 and 3.2.1 with 5.1.1 and 5.2.1 respectively, and to employ result 1.2.8 in the case of  $t$ -admissible sets.

Lemma 5.3.2 Let  $P$  be a convex lattice polygon, and let  $v$  and  $c$  denote the numbers of vertices and interior lattice points of  $P$  respectively.

- (i) If  $v = 4$ , and  $P$  has no pair of parallel edges, then  $c \geq 1$ .
- (ii) If  $v = 5$ , then  $c \geq 1$ .
- (iii) If  $v = 6$  and  $c = 1$ , then  $P$  is equivalent under an integral unimodular transformation to the centrally symmetric hexagon  $H_0$  illustrated in Figure 5.1 (opposite).
- (iv) If  $v > 6$ , then  $c \geq 2$ .
- (v) If  $v = 5$ , and  $P$  has an edge containing two lattice points in its relative interior, then  $c \geq 2$ .
- (vi) If  $v = 6$  and all the interior points of  $P$  are collinear on line  $\ell$ , then  $\ell$  passes through two vertices of  $P$ , and is parallel to the two sides of  $P$  not incident with these vertices.
- (vii) If  $v \geq 7$ , then  $c \geq 4$  and  $c = 4$  only if the lattice points interior to  $P$  form a parallelogram.
- (viii) If  $v = 8$  and  $c = 4$ , then  $P$  is an integral unimodular transform of  $O_0$ , the symmetric octahedron shown in Figure 5.1. If

$v = 8$  and  $c > 4$ , then  $c \geq 6$ .

(ix) If  $v = 9$  then  $c \geq 7$ , and  $c = 7$  only if  $P$  is an integral unimodular transform of  $N_0$ , the 9-gon shown in Figure 5.1.

Proof The statements (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) have been proved in lemma 3.4.1.

(v) Let  $P_5 = V_1V_2V_3V_4I_1I_2V_5$  denote a convex lattice 5-gon with lattice points  $I_1$  and  $I_2$  on edge  $V_4V_5$ . By result (ii),  $P_5$  contains in its interior a lattice point  $L$ . Since at least one of  $V_2V_3V_4I_1L$  or  $V_1V_2LI_2V_5$  is a convex lattice 5-gon, result (ii) asserts that  $P_5$  contains a second interior lattice point, proving (v).

(vi) Let  $P_6$  be a convex lattice 6-gon, and let  $\ell$  be the line containing all interior lattice points of  $P_6$ . Let  $L_1, L_2$  be interior points of  $P_6$ . We claim that  $P_6$  has exactly two vertices on  $\ell$  and two on either side. For otherwise  $P_6$  would properly contain a convex lattice 5-gon with vertices  $L_1L_2$  and three vertices of  $P_6$  to one side of  $\ell$ ; by result (ii) this would contradict that all interior lattice points of  $P$  lie on  $\ell$ . Since the previous argument will be used repeatedly throughout the proof of this lemma, we give it the name "Pentagon argument". A lattice quadrilateral  $Q$  given by the intersection of  $P_6$  with a closed halfplane bounded by  $\ell$  contains no lattice points in its interior, and so by result (i) has a pair of parallel edges. The same may be said of the lattice quadrilateral  $Q'$  contained in  $Q$ , which is given by replacing the vertices of  $Q$  on  $\ell$  by  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . Therefore  $Q$  has an edge parallel to  $\ell$ . Applying this argument to the halfplanes both sides of  $\ell$ , we deduce that the

two edges of  $P_6$ , not incident with  $\ell$ , are parallel to  $\ell$ .

We have so proved (vi).

(vii) Let  $P_7$  be a convex lattice polygon with  $v \geq 7$ .

By (iv),  $P_7$  contains at least two interior lattice points  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . If the line  $\ell = L_1L_2$  meets the boundary of  $P_7$  at two vertices of  $P_7$ , they together with the three vertices of  $P_7$  which must be to one side of  $\ell$  form a convex lattice 5-gon with both  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  in the relative interior of one edge. By result (v) this pentagon and so  $P_7$  contains two further lattice points. If the line  $\ell$  meets the boundary of  $P_7$  in just one vertex of  $P_7$ , say  $V$ , we can form a lattice 6-gon, not a transform of  $H_0$ , from edge  $L_1L_2V$  and four vertices of  $P_7$  to one side of  $\ell$ ; unless  $v = 7$  and there are three vertices of  $P_7$  to each side of  $\ell$ . In this case we can then form a lattice 5-gon on each side of  $\ell$  with edge  $L_1L_2$  and each set of three vertices. In either case we can use results (ii) or (iii) to show that  $P_7$  contains two further interior lattice points. Finally, if  $\ell$  does not meet  $P_7$  in any vertex, we can either construct 5-gons to either side of  $\ell$  as above, or we can construct, from edge  $L_1L_2$  and the 5 vertices of  $P_7$  which otherwise must lie to one side of  $\ell$ , a lattice 7-gon. Since result (iv) shows that this 7-gon contains two interior lattice points, we can so deduce that  $P_7$  contains at least four interior lattice points.

Let us assume that  $P_7$  has  $c = 4$ . If three of the interior lattice points of  $P_7$  lie on line  $\ell$ , the above argument shows that  $P_7$  has, in addition to the lattice points on  $\ell$ , at least two further interior lattice points. Hence if  $c = 4$ ,  $P_7$  has no such 3 collinear interior lattice points.

Again, let  $P_7$  as above with  $v \geq 7$  have  $c = 4$ . We now show that the convex hull of these four interior lattice points of  $P_7$  is a quadrilateral. By the above, no three of these points are collinear. The only other possibility is that the four lattice points form a triangle  $T$  (say  $L_1L_2L_3$ ) with an interior point  $L_4$ . Each exterior open halfplane bounded by an edge (line) of  $T$  contains at most two vertices of  $P_7$ , for otherwise we could apply the pentagon argument to three such vertices and the two vertices of  $T$  on that edge. Since the union of the three open halfspaces to the sides of  $T$  and away from  $T$  is the whole plane minus the closed triangle  $T$ , we deduce that  $P_7$  has at most six vertices, contradicting  $v \geq 7$ .

Hence  $P_7$  contains in its interior a lattice 4-gon  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$ , and no other lattice points. By result (i) this 4-gon has a pair of parallel sides, and since lattice points are regularly spaced on parallel lattice lines we deduce that it is a parallelogram.

(viii) Let  $P_8$  be a convex lattice 8-gon with  $c = 4$ , and let  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$  be the interior lattice points forming a parallelogram by (vii). No vertex of  $P_8$  lies in the open strip between parallel lines  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$ , since otherwise we could apply the pentagon argument to it and points  $L_1L_2L_3$  and  $L_4$ . There can be no three vertices to one side of the closed strip between  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$  either, for if there were three to the side of  $L_1L_2$  say, then we could apply the pentagon argument to these three vertices and  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . Hence four vertices of  $P_8$  lie on the lines  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$ , and as  $c = 4$ , they are adjacent to points  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$  on these lines. We apply this argument also to the strip between parallel lines  $L_1L_4$  and  $L_2L_3$ . Therefore all the vertices of  $P_8$  lie on the edges of parallelogram  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$ . Hence, under an integral unimodular

transformation which maps  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$  to a square in standard position,  $P_8$  is mapped to the symmetric octahedron  $O_0$ .

Now let  $P_8$  be a convex lattice 8-gon with  $c \geq 5$ . We may assume that  $N$ , the convex lattice polygon formed as the convex hull of the lattice points interior to  $P_8$ , is not a 5-gon, since then (ii) would imply that  $c \geq 6$  and hence the result. We also assume that  $L_1L_2L_3L_4L_5$  are the only lattice points interior to  $P_8$ . Now, using the same argument which we applied to triangle  $T$  in (vii), each exterior open halfplane of  $N$  contains at most 2 vertices of  $N$ . If  $N$  is a line segment or a triangle we can thus deduce that  $v \leq 6$ , a contradiction. Hence  $N$  is a quadrilateral. We distinguish two cases, when  $L_5$  is interior to quadrilateral  $N = L_1L_2L_3L_4$  and when  $L_5$  lies on an edge, say  $L_1L_2$  of  $N$ .

We suppose first that  $L_5$  is interior to  $N$ . By the pentagon argument, there are at most two vertices of  $P_8$  in the exterior open halfplane bounded by side  $L_1L_2$  of  $N$ , not containing  $L_5$ . The same is true of  $L_3L_4$ . Hence in the closed wedge  $W$  formed by these two edges  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$ ,  $P_8$  has at least four vertices. However, to either side of  $N$  in this wedge there is at most one vertex of  $P_8$ , since we can apply the pentagon argument to  $L_5, L_i, L_j$  and any two vertices in the intersection of  $W$  with the exterior open halfplane bounded by  $L_iL_j$  not containing  $L_5$ , where the pair  $(i,j)$  is either  $(1,4)$  or  $(2,3)$ . Hence the closed wedge between edges  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$  contains both at least four and at most two vertices of  $P_8$ , a clear contradiction. It follows that  $c \geq 6$ .

We suppose now that  $L_5$  lies on the edge  $L_1L_2$  of  $N$ . By result (i) applied to both quadrilaterals  $L_1L_2L_3L_4$  and  $L_2L_3L_4L_5$ , we deduce that  $L_1L_2$  is parallel to  $L_3L_4$ . We now apply the argument given above in (viii) to deduce that  $P_8$  has four vertices on lines  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$  and its other four vertices outside the closed strip between these lines. Hence the exterior open halfplanes bounded by  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$  each contain two vertices of  $P_8$ . No vertices other than those lying on  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_3L_4$  can lie outside the closed wedge  $W$  formed by lines  $L_1L_4$  and  $L_2L_3$ , for we can otherwise apply the pentagon argument to  $L_iL_j$  and three vertices of  $P_8$  in the open exterior halfplane bounded by  $L_iL_j$  not containing  $L_5$  if  $(i,j) = (1,4)$  or  $(2,3)$ . Hence the two vertices of  $P_8$  in the open exterior halfplane bounded by  $L_3L_4$  not containing  $L_5$  must lie in  $W$ , and so form with  $L_3L_4L_5$  a pentagon. Applying the pentagon argument to this pentagon, we obtain a contradiction. Hence (viii) is proved.

(ix) Let  $P_9$  be a convex lattice polygon with  $v = 9$ . Let  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  be two different convex lattice 8-gons whose vertices are vertices of  $P_9$ . Since  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  share 7 vertices, they share 4 vertices which are consecutive on the boundary of  $P_9$ . The convex lattice 8-gon  $O_0$  can be uniquely completed from any four of its consecutive vertices. If both  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  are transforms of  $O_0$ , they can therefore also be uniquely completed from any four of their consecutive vertices. Hence, as  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  share four consecutive vertices,  $O_1 = O_2$  in contradiction to our choice. Hence at least one of  $O_1$  and  $O_2$ , say  $O_1$  is not a transform of  $O_0$ , and so by results (vii) and (viii), we deduce that  $c \geq 6$ .

We first show that  $P_9$  may be assumed to contain in its interior two lattice points such that all other lattice points interior to  $P_9$  lie strictly to one side of the line through them. To the contrary, we suppose that  $N$ , the polygonal convex hull of all interior lattice points of  $P_9$  has at least three lattice points on each edge. By the pentagon argument, we know that  $P_9$  has at most two vertices in the open halfplane not containing  $N$  bounded by any edge of  $N$ . As  $v = 9$ ,  $N$  has therefore at least five edges, and so  $c \geq 10$ . We may therefore assume that  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are two interior lattice points of  $P_9$ , with all other interior lattice points of  $P_9$  in the open halfplane  $H_1$  bounded by the line  $\ell = L_1L_2$ .

By the pentagon argument  $P_9$  has at most two vertices in the open complementary halfplane of  $H_1$  and of course at most two vertices on  $\ell$ . Hence  $P_9$  has at least five vertices in  $H_1$ . If  $P_9$  has 6 or more vertices in  $H_1$ , they together with  $L_1L_2$  and any vertices on  $\ell$  form either a convex lattice 8-gon, not unimodular equivalent to  $O_0$  since it contains 3 lattice points on  $\ell$ , or a convex lattice 9-gon. In either case result (viii) or our first comment in this proof of (ix) shows that  $P_9$  contains an additional 6 lattice points in its interior, giving the result  $c > 7$ .

We can therefore assume that  $P_9$ , with vertices labelled cyclically has vertices  $V_1V_2 \dots V_9$ , with  $V_9, L_1, L_2, V_6$  lying in this order on  $\ell$ . We first argue that  $c \geq 7$ . To the contrary, suppose  $c = 6$  and so that  $P_9$  has only four interior lattice points in  $H_1$ . If the edge  $V_7V_8$  of  $P_9$  contains in its relative interior any lattice points, we modify  $P_9$  by taking  $V_7$  to be the closest such lattice point to  $V_8$ . Since all 6 interior points of  $P_9$  belong to the closure of  $H_1$ , both  $v$  and  $c$  are unaltered

in this transformation. We can therefore without loss of generality assume that there are no lattice points in the relative interior of edge  $V_7V_8$ . Applying result (i) to both the quadrilaterals  $V_6V_7V_8V_9$  and  $V_6V_7V_8V_1$ , we deduce that edge  $V_7V_8$  is parallel to  $\ell$ . Since  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are adjacent lattice points on  $\ell$ , and  $V_7, V_8$  adjacent on a line parallel to  $\ell$ , the quadrilateral  $L_1L_2V_7V_8$  is a parallelogram.

We show that  $V_2$  lies in the closed halfplane  $H_2$ , bounded by  $L_1V_8$ , and containing  $L_2$ . For if  $V_2$  is outside  $H_2$ ,  $V_1V_2L_1V_8V_9$  is a convex lattice 5-gon which by (ii) contains an interior lattice point  $L_3$ , which being interior to  $P_9$  lies in  $H_1$ . But then  $L_1L_3V_2V_3V_4V_5V_6$  is a convex lattice 7-gon, which by (vi) contains four additional interior lattice points, contrary to our assumption that  $c = 6$ . A symmetric argument shows that  $V_4$  lies in the closed halfplane  $H_3$  bounded by  $L_2V_7$  containing  $L_1$ . We complete the contradiction by simply noting that  $V_3$  must lie in the interior of the strip  $H_2 \cap H_3$  bounded by  $L_1V_8$  and  $V_2V_7$ ; however there are no lattice points in this strip. Hence  $c \geq 7$ .

We now suppose that  $c = 7$ , and that  $V_9L_1L_2$  and  $V_6$  are collinear in this order on  $\ell$ , as was the case prior to our assumption that  $c = 6$  above. We note that the description of  $P_9$  so far given is ambiguous, in that the same configuration is attained if the points so far labelled are relabelled, interchanging  $L_1, L_2$  and interchanging  $V_j$  and  $V_k$  whenever  $j+k \equiv 6 \pmod{9}$ .

We first show that with one of these labellings, there is a chord of  $P_9$  passing through  $L_2$  and a second interior lattice point  $L_3$  of  $P_9$ , with  $L_1V_7V_8$  and  $V_9$  to one side of it, and

with all the other vertices and interior lattice points of  $P_9$  to the other. To the contrary, we assume that with neither labelling there is such a chord. There are therefore no lattice points in the open triangles  $V_1L_2V_9$  and  $V_5V_6L_1$ . We also claim that there is no lattice point  $V$  on the line segment between  $L_1$  and  $V_5$ . For if there was such a lattice point  $V$  closest to  $L_1$ , we could produce a lattice point  $U$  in the triangle  $V_5V_6L_1$  by adding  $L_2-L_1$  to  $V$ . By supposition then,  $U$  is on the edge  $V_5V_6$ . However then the octagon  $UL_2V_9V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5$  is not a transform of  $O_0$ , since  $L_1$  is interior to the edge  $L_2V_9$ , and so by (viii) contains at least 6 lattice points in its interior, making  $c \geq 8$ . We have by a similar argument, applied to the alternative labelling of  $P_9$ , that there are no lattice points on the line segment  $L_2V_1$ .

Hence neither of the parallelograms with sides  $V_5V_6$  and  $V_6L_1$  or with sides  $L_2V_9$  and  $V_9V_1$  contain any lattice points except those on the sides parallel to  $\ell$ , and so the line  $V_1V_5$  is parallel to  $\ell$ . Were there two or fewer lattice points interior to  $P_9$  on the line segment  $V_1V_5$ , there would be insufficient lattice lines parallel to  $V_5V_6$  intersecting  $P_9$  to carry each of  $V_2V_3$  and  $V_4$  on a separate such line, as is required for them to be vertices of  $P_9$ . Were there more than three lattice points between  $V_1$  and  $V_5$ , by result (v) the lattice 5-gon  $V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5$  contains at least two further lattice points, giving  $c \geq 8$ . There are thus exactly 3 lattice points interior to the segment  $V_1V_5$ . Because three interior lattice points of  $P_9$  lie on  $V_1V_5$  and two on  $V_9V_6$ , the edges  $V_8V_9$  and  $V_6V_7$  of  $P_9$  are not parallel. Therefore, by (i), the quadrilateral  $V_5V_7V_8V_9$ , which contains no interior lattice points of  $P_9$  in its interior, has a pair of parallel edges, namely  $V_6V_9$  and  $V_7V_8$ . Hence when the lines

$V_5V_6$  and  $V_1V_9$  are extended, they meet the line  $V_7V_8$  in two lattice points, with only one lattice point between them. In order that  $V_6$  and  $V_9$  be vertices of the strictly convex set  $P_9$ , it is necessary then for  $V_7$  and  $V_8$  to both be this single lattice point, contradicting the fact that  $v = 9$ . By this contradiction, we have shown that we may assume that there is a chord of  $P_9$ , passing through  $L_2$  and a second interior lattice point  $L_3$  of  $P_9$ , with  $L_1V_7V_8$  and  $V_9$  to one side of it, and with all the other vertices and interior lattice points of  $P_9$  to the other.

The convex lattice 8-gon  $L_2L_3V_1V_2V_3V_4V_5V_6$  contains only four interior lattice points, and so is a transform of  $O_0$ . We suppose this 8-gon to be  $O_0$ , in standard position. We now claim that  $V_6L_2$  is a side of  $O_0$  parallel to the sides of  $M$ , the convex hull of the four interior lattice points of  $O_0$ . The side  $V_6L_2$  of  $O_0$ , when extended, contains successively  $L_1$  and then  $V_9$ . Since when an edge of  $O_0$  not parallel to an edge of  $M$  is extended, the second lattice point encountered is collinear with an edge of  $O_0$ . As the vertices  $V_9, V_1$  and  $V_2$  of  $P_9$  are not collinear, we deduce the above claim. Indeed, not only are  $V_9$  and  $L_1$  fixed in relation to  $O_0$ , up to an isometry of  $O_0$  which is automatically an integral unimodular transformation anyway, but  $V_7$  and  $V_8$  must lie on an adjacent lattice line parallel to  $\ell$ . This follows by applying result (i) to the lattice quadrilateral  $V_6V_7V_8V_9$  which contains no lattice points in its interior, and by noting that since  $V_1V_2$  and  $V_5V_6$  are parallel sides of  $O_0$ , the lines  $V_8V_9$  and  $V_6V_7$  are not parallel. As there are only two lattice points on this lattice line parallel to  $\ell$  between the lines  $V_5V_6$  and  $V_1V_9$ , the points  $V_7$  and  $V_8$  are

uniquely specified. This then is the unique configuration  $N_0$ .

We have thus proved (ix).

This completes the proof of lemma 5.3.2.

With a computer program running a simple search through "likely" convex lattice polygons, I have found polygons with the following values of  $v$  and  $c$ .

Conjecture 5.3.2 (Extension to lemma 5.3.2) The following table gives the least number  $c$  of interior lattice points of a convex lattice polygon having  $v$ -vertices.

$v$	10	12	14	16	18	20	22
$c$	10	19	34	52	79	112	154
$v$	24	26	28	30	32	34	36
$c$	199	262	332	416	508	616	732

Lemma 5.3.3 If  $K$  is a centrally symmetric  $t$ -admissible set, with  $s(K) \geq 2$ , then  $K$  has an extremal chord of symmetry.

Proof. If  $K$  is centred at  $0$ , any chord of  $K$  is extremal. We suppose then that  $0'$ , not  $0$ , is the centre of  $K$ . Note there is no need for  $0'$  to be a lattice point. We also suppose that  $P_i 0 P_i'$ , for  $i=1,2$ , are distinct chords of symmetry of  $K$ . Clearly, no chord of (0-) symmetry lies on the line  $00'$ . We can thus assume without loss of generality that  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  lie to the same side of  $00'$ . We let  $Q_1$  and  $Q_1'$  be the reflections

of  $P_i$  and  $P'_i$  in  $O'$ , respectively, for  $i=1,2$ . The line segments  $P_1P_2$  and  $Q'_1Q'_2$  are distinct, parallel and lie to the same side of  $OO'$ . Since  $K$  is convex,  $P_1P_2Q'_1$  and  $Q'_2$  are therefore collinear. Hence  $P_1P_2$  and  $Q_1Q_2$  are parallel lines of support of  $K$ , and so  $P_1Q_1$  is an extremal chord of symmetry.

Lemma 5.3.4 (i) Let  $n$  be an odd integer greater than 1, and suppose that  $P$  is a convex  $n$ -gon in the plane, all of whose edges have a lattice point as midpoint.

If  $P$  contains  $c$  ( $c \geq 0$ ) lattice points in its interior, then

$$A(P) \leq 2c+2.$$

(ii) Let  $R$  be any convex lattice polygon, other than a triangle  $T$  containing just one interior lattice point and whose sides each contain 4 lattice points.

If  $R$  has  $c$ ,  $c \geq 1$ , lattice points in its interior, then

$$A(R) \leq 2c+2.$$

Proof. We first prove (ii). Let  $b$  denote the number of lattice points on the boundary of  $R$ . By Theorem 1.4.2, Scott's result on convex lattice polygons, since  $R \neq T$  and  $c \geq 1$ ,

$$b \leq 2c+6. \quad (1)$$

By Theorem 1.4.1, the area of  $R$  is given by

$$A(R) = \frac{1}{2}b + c - 1. \quad (2)$$

From (1) and (2) result (ii) is trivially deduced.

By applying lemma 3.4.3(i) to  $P$ , we deduce that  $P$  is a lattice polygon with an odd number of lattice points on all sides.

Hence (i) follows from (ii), unless  $c = 0$ . By lemma 5.3.2(ii), (iv) we deduce that if  $c = 0$  then  $n = 3$ , and that  $P$  has just six lattice points on its boundary. Result (i) then follows from equation (2).

#### 5.4 A reduction to $t$ -admissible polygons of a special type.

In this section we generalise the results of Section 3.5, and so prove

Theorem 5.4.1 It is sufficient to prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3 for a restricted class of  $t$ -admissible sets, which have the following properties

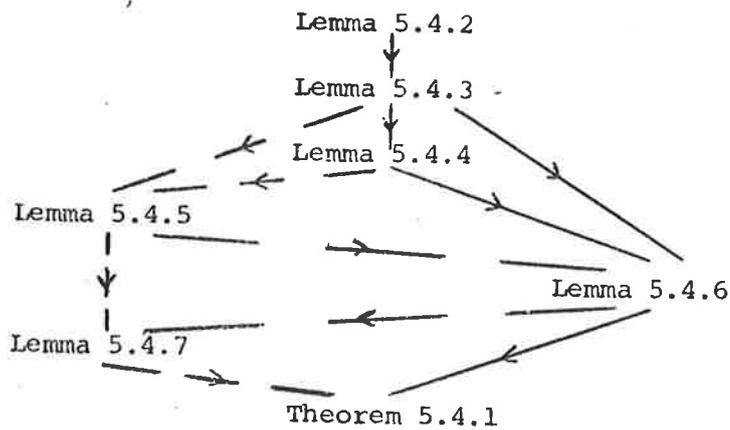
- (i)  $K$  is a polygon
- (ii) Each edge of  $K$  is a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , or a multiple lattice point edge.
- (iii) If  $K$  is a triangle, it has no lattice midpoint edge, and if  $K$  is a quadrilateral, it has at most two lattice midpoint edges.

We shall prove this result by a series of lemmas.

Throughout this chapter we assume that  $K$  is a  $t$ -admissible set with  $s(K) > 1$ . To prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3 we must show that  $K$  is bounded by one of two bounds, the lesser of which is  $2(t+2)\det(\Lambda)$ . Each of the following lemmas proves that either  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)\det(\Lambda)$ , or that  $A(K)$  is less than the area of a  $t$ -admissible set with specific properties. In this manner, we can successively assume that the set  $K$  has the properties above.

The following lemmas are interdependent. By lemmas 5.4.2 and 5.4.3 we assume that  $K$  is a polygon, each edge of which has a

lattice point in its relative interior. Lemma 5.4.4 is a service lemma, detailing how an individual edge of  $K$  can be modified. This result is used, together with a boundedness result proved via lemma 5.4.3, in lemma 5.4.6. This essentially completes the proof of Theorem 5.4.1, except that to prove the boundedness result, we need to deal separately with triangular and quadrilateral  $K$ . We do this with lemmas 5.4.5 and 5.4.7. The following diagram illustrates the interdependence of the lemmas. The broken arrows indicate the parts of the proof which deal with triangles and quadrilaterals.



Lemma 5.4.2 We may assume that  $K$  is a convex polygon, with at least  $s(K)$  edges.

Proof. From Theorem 5.1.1 we may assume that  $s(K)$  is odd and finite. As  $O$  is an interior point of the  $t$ -admissible set  $K$ , by Theorem 1.3.2,  $K$  is bounded. Hence  $K$  is separated from all the lattice points not in its interior by a finite number of lines. We can therefore construct a polygon  $K'$  about  $K$  which is

bounded by these lines and by the supporting lines to  $K$  at the endpoints of its chords of symmetry. We may clearly take  $K$  so that each edge of  $K$  contains in its relative interior at least one endpoint of a chord of symmetry, or a lattice point. We note that  $K$  has no smaller area, no fewer lines of symmetry than  $K$  and contains no lattice points in its interior other than those contained in the interior of  $K$ . Hence we take  $K$  to be the  $t$ -admissible polygon  $K$ . Should an edge of  $K$  contain an endpoint of each of three or more chords of symmetry, by convexity the other endpoints of these chords lie on a parallel edge of  $K$ . By Theorem 1.2.8, we then know that  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ . Hence  $K$  has at least  $s(K)$  edges.

Lemma 5.4.3 We may also assume that each edge of  $K$  has a lattice point in its relative interior.

Proof. We let  $E$  be an edge of the polygon  $K$ , and suppose that  $E$  has no lattice point in its relative interior. We modify  $K$ , by replacing  $E$  with an edge  $E(r)$ , parallel to  $E$  and distance  $r$  further away from  $O$  than  $E$ . Denote by  $K(r)$  the polygon obtained from  $K$  by including  $E(r)$  in place of  $E$ , and extending the edges of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$ . We continue to increase  $r$  until one of three things happen.

- (a) the length of  $E(r)$  becomes zero, or
- (b) there is a lattice point in the relative interior of  $E(r)$ , or
- (c)  $s(K(r)) \neq s(K)$ .

One of these things must happen, for as  $K$  contains a disc  $\mathcal{D}$  about  $O$ ,  $K(r) \supset K \supset \mathcal{D}$ , and by Theorem 1.3.2,  $K(r)$  is bounded

by a uniform bound for all  $r$ .

In section 3.6 we showed that should (c) occur either with or before either (a) or (b), when  $r = r^*$ , then  $A(K(r^*)) \leq 4$ .

This generalises with no complication to the present case, by using results 5.1.1 and 5.3.1 in place of results 3.1.1 and 3.5.1. We can therefore deduce that should (c) occur either with or before either (a) or (b), that then  $A(K(r^*)) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

We note that the set  $K(r)$  is still  $t$ -admissible, since condition (b) occurs prior to any additional lattice point becoming interior to  $K(r)$ . By applying the above modification to any edge of  $K$  which has no lattice point in its relative interior, successively until there are no such edges left, we produce a modified set  $K^*$ , which is  $t$ -admissible. Since if (c) occurs, then  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$  as required by Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3, we may assume that  $s(K^*) = s(K)$ . As  $K^*$  has no lesser area than  $K$ , we take  $K$  to be the  $t$ -admissible polygon  $K^*$ , all of whose edges have property (b), as required by lemma 5.4.3.

Lemma 5.4.4 Let  $K$  be as above. We suppose that  $K$  has an edge  $E$ , which has a single lattice point in its relative interior, but which is not a lattice midpoint edge. Then  $K$  may be modified, increasing its area and  $E$  replaced by either a multiple lattice point edge or a lattice midpoint edge.

Proof. We suppose that  $L$ , not the midpoint of edge  $E$  of  $K$ , is the only lattice point in the relative interior of  $E$ . We let  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  be edges of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$ . We let  $K(\psi)$  be the set formed by replacing  $E$  with an edge  $E(\psi)$ , through  $L$ , making

an angle  $\psi$  with  $E$ , and by extending  $E_+$  or  $E_-$  to meet  $E(\psi)$ . As  $L$  is not the midpoint of  $E$ , we may orient  $\psi$  so that for (small) positive  $\psi$ , the set  $K(\psi)$  has area greater than  $A(K)$ . As the boundary of  $K$  is continuous, and since  $E(\psi)$  pivots about  $L$  which is not its continuously varying midpoint,  $A(K(\psi))$  increases continuously with  $\psi$  until one of three things happen.

- (d)  $L$  is the midpoint of  $E(\psi)$ , or
- (e) the relative interior of  $E(\psi)$  contains two or more lattice points, or
- (f)  $s(K(\psi)) \neq s(K)$ .

No lattice points are lost from the boundary of  $K$  in this modification of  $K$ . For, were  $L_1$  to be lost at angle  $\psi$ , as  $L$  is not the midpoint of  $E(\psi)$ , the lattice point  $2L-L_1$  lies in the relative interior of  $E(\psi)$ . Hence all those lattice points on the boundary of  $K$  lie on the boundary of  $K(\psi)$ , although possibly at vertices of  $K(\psi)$ . Also, all those lattice points besides  $O$  which belong to the interior of  $K$  continue to belong to  $K(\psi)$ , although they may now lie on  $E(\psi)$ , if  $\psi$  is an angle such as given by (e). Hence  $K(\psi)$  is also a  $t$ -admissible set, provided  $O$  is an interior point of  $K(\psi)$ .

We next show that  $O$  is still an interior point of  $K(\psi)$ . To the contrary we suppose that  $O$  is not interior to  $K(\psi_*)$ , and so the edge  $E(\psi_*)$  contains  $O$  in its relative interior, as well as  $L$ . We consider the set  $K(\psi)$  as  $\psi$  approaches  $\psi_*$ , and show that condition (f) occurs before  $\psi = \psi_*$ . Since  $O$  is an interior point of  $K$ , there is a neighbourhood of  $O$  such that

no boundary points of  $K(\psi)$  other than those of  $E(\psi)$  may lie in this neighbourhood. Now the directions of the edges  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  adjacent to  $E(\psi)$  are not altered by varying  $\psi$ . Further, as each of  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  contains a lattice point in its relative interior, the lengths of  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  are not reduced to zero by the modification. Hence, when  $\psi$  is such that  $E(\psi)$  is sufficiently close to  $O$ , the sets  $K(\psi)$  and its reflection in  $O$ ,  $\overline{K(\psi)}$  can intersect only in the arbitrarily thin figure  $J$  bounded by three segments  $E_-$ ,  $E(\psi)$  and  $E_+$ , and their three reflections in  $O$ . The lattice point  $O$  is not the midpoint of  $E(\psi_*)$ , since, as  $\psi$  approaches  $\psi_*$ , the edge  $E(\psi)$  becomes closer to the interior point  $O$  of  $K(\psi)$ , and therefore  $O$  is adjacent to the shorter of the two segments into which  $L$  divides  $E(\psi)$ . Hence, with  $O$  not the midpoint of  $E(\psi)$ , and with the directions of  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  fixed, the boundary of  $K(\psi)$  meets that of  $\overline{K(\psi)}$  in just two points, for all values of  $\psi$  making  $J$  suitably thin. Hence  $s(K(\psi)) = 1$  for all values of  $\psi$  sufficiently close to  $\psi_*$ . Therefore condition (f) occurs before  $O$  is a boundary point of the transformed set. The modification therefore stops before  $\psi = \psi_*$ , and so  $O$  is an interior point of  $K(\psi)$ . Hence  $K(\psi)$  is  $t$ -admissible.

By the above argument, it is clear that one of conditions (d) (e) and (f) must occur, at say  $\psi = \psi_*$ , and that there is a neighbourhood of  $O$  common to all the transformed sets  $K(\psi)$ , for  $\psi \leq \psi_*$ . By Cohn's result, Theorem 1.3.2, the sets  $K(\psi)$  are uniformly bounded. As in Chapter 3.6, we can deduce then that if (f) occurs either with or before either (d) or (e), that  $A(K(\psi_*)) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

Otherwise, if (d) or (e) occur, the set  $K(\psi_*)$  is that required by lemma 5.4.4.

Lemma 5.4.5 If  $K$  is a triangle, we may assume that at least two edges of  $K$  are multiple lattice point edges. If  $K$  is a quadrilateral, we may assume that at least one edge of  $K$  is a multiple lattice point edge.

Proof. We first adapt the modification to  $K$  detailed in lemma 5.4.4. We suppose that  $E$  is a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , centred at  $L$ . We denote by  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  the edges of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$ , and suppose that  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  meet in the halfplane bounded by  $E$  and containing  $K$ . We claim that we may modify  $K$  even though  $L$  is the midpoint of  $E$ . For, if we replace  $E$  by an edge  $E(\psi)$  at angle  $\psi$  to  $E$  ( $\psi$  small, either orientation), the set  $K(\psi)$  so formed has greater area than  $K$ . The incidence property of  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  guarantees this, for a congruent copy of the triangle  $K \sim K(\psi)$  is contained in the triangle  $K(\psi) \sim K$ . In fact, since  $\psi$  may be chosen with either orientation, an edge  $E$ , with edges  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  adjacent to it as above, cannot be modified by the modification of lemma 5.4.4 to an edge satisfying condition (d). The edge  $E(\psi)$  can be further modified exactly as in lemma 5.4.4, since  $L$  is not the midpoint of  $E(\psi)$ , until either condition (e) or (f) occurs, as condition (d) cannot.

In order to claim that the sets  $K(\psi)$  so obtained are uniformly bounded, it is sufficient to note that by the same argument used in the proof of lemma 5.4.4,  $O$  is an interior

point of  $K(\psi^*)$  when condition (e) or (f) occurs. Similarly, as in lemma 5.4.4,  $K(\psi)$  contains no lattice points in its interior which are not interior points of  $K$ . Hence  $K(\psi)$  is  $t$ -admissible, for all  $\psi$  between 0 and  $\psi^*$ . Also, by Cohn's result, Theorem 1.3.2 the sets  $K(\psi)$ , for  $\psi$  between 0 and  $\psi^*$ , are uniformly bounded. As in Chapter 3.6, we deduce that if condition (f) occurs either with or before (e), then  $A(K(\psi^*)) \leq 2(t+2)$ . We therefore assume that  $E(\psi^*)$  has property (e).

The above modification to lemma 5.4.5, allows us to modify an edge  $E$  of  $K$  for which condition (d) applies, provided  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  meet to the side of  $E$  containing  $K$ . We can clearly always use this result for such an edge  $E$ , if  $K$  is a triangle.

We first suppose that  $K$  is a triangle with no multiple lattice point edges. We suppose that  $E$  is an edge of  $K$  containing a single lattice point  $L$  in its interior. By the modification of lemma 5.4.4, started, if necessary, as above, we may assume that  $E$  may be replaced by a multiple lattice point edge  $E(\psi)$  through  $L$ . The set  $K(\psi)$  so formed has the same number of chords of symmetry as  $K$ , and has area no less than  $A(K)$ .

We may therefore suppose that a triangular set  $K$  has at least one multiple lattice point edge. We now suppose that  $K$  is a triangle with a single multiple lattice point edge  $E$ , and that one of the other edges  $E_1$  of  $K$  has its single interior lattice point  $L$  closer to the vertex  $V$  of  $K$  not on  $E$  than it is to the vertex  $F \cap E$  of  $K$ . We apply the modification of lemma 5.4.4 to  $E_1$ , replacing  $E_1$  by a multiple lattice point edge. The edge  $E$  adjacent to  $E_1$  is so extended, and remains a multiple

lattice point edge. The triangle  $K$  so formed satisfies the requirement of this lemma.

We therefore suppose that  $K$  is a triangle with a single multiple lattice point edge  $E$ , and that the other edges of  $K$ ,  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ , have lattice points  $L_1, L_2$  in their relative interiors, respectively. We suppose that  $L_1$  is no further from the vertex  $E \cap E_1$  than it is from the vertex  $V = E_1 \cap E_2$ , for  $i=1,2$ . We apply the modification of lemma 5.4.4 to  $E_1$ , started if necessary as above, and replace  $E_1$  by a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1'$ , and in so doing shorten edge  $E$  of  $K$ . The lattice point  $L_2$  on  $E_2$  lies no further from  $E \cap E_2$  than from the vertex  $V' = E_1' \cap E_2$  of  $K'$ , and so edge  $E_2$  of  $K'$  can be modified, if necessary, by lemma 5.4.4 into a multiple lattice point edge  $E_2''$ , taking  $K'$  to  $K''$ . We note that  $E$  need no longer be a multiple lattice point edge of  $K''$ , for in the modifications its lattice points can become its endpoints. However, by reapplying the modification of lemma 5.4.3 to  $E$  if necessary, we can assume that  $E$  contains a lattice point in its relative interior. The resulting set  $K'''$  satisfies the statement of the lemma.

We next suppose that  $K$  is a quadrilateral, each of whose edges contains only one lattice point in its relative interior. If  $K$  is a parallelogram, then it is a centrally symmetric convex set with  $s(K) \geq 3$ , and so by lemma 5.3.3, it has an extremal chord of symmetry. By Corollary 5.2.1, we deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$  in this case.

We may therefore suppose that the quadrilateral  $K$  has an edge  $E$  such that the edges  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  adjacent to  $E$  meet in

the halfplane bounded by  $E$  containing  $K$ . By the modification of lemma 5.4.4, applied to  $E$  and started as above if the edge  $E$  has a lattice midpoint  $L$ , we may replace  $E$  with a multiple lattice point edge  $E'$ . The set  $K'$  so formed satisfies the conditions required for lemma 5.4.5, unless  $E'$  passes through the sole lattice point in the relative interior of either  $E_1$  or  $E_2$ . Without loss of generality we suppose that  $E'$  passes through  $L_1$  the sole lattice point in the relative interior of  $E_1$ . The edge  $E'_1$  of  $K$  contains no lattice point in its relative interior, and so by lemma 5.4.3 we can replace  $E'_1$  by a parallel edge  $E''_1$  either of length zero or which contains a lattice point in its relative interior. Hence  $K''$  so formed is either a triangle or satisfies the requirement of lemma 5.4.5. As we have dealt with the case of modifying such a triangle above, we may assume that  $K$  has the properties stated in the lemma.

Lemma 5.4.6 We may assume that every edge of  $K$  is a lattice midpoint edge or a multiple lattice point edge.

Proof. The convex hull of the set of lattice points on the relative interior of the edges of  $K$  is a convex lattice  $n$ -gon  $Y$ . We claim that  $n \geq 5$ . By lemma 5.4.3, we have been able to assume that each edge of  $K$  has a lattice point in its relative interior. Hence if  $K$  has five or more edges,  $n \geq 5$ . Otherwise,  $K$  is either a triangle or quadrilateral and  $n \geq 5$  by lemma 5.4.5.

By lemma 5.3.2(ii), the lattice polygon  $Y$  contains in its interior a fixed disc about an interior lattice point  $L$  of  $K$ , not necessarily  $O$ . Further, all the sets  $K'$  which can be

obtained by repeatedly modifying  $K$  by the modifications of lemma 5.4.3 and 5.4.4 contain the lattice polygon  $Y$ , and so contain this same neighbourhood of the common interior point  $L$ . By translating any such  $K'$  by the integral translation taking  $L$  to  $O$ , we can apply Cohn's Theorem, Theorem 1.3.2 to this translate  $K''$ . We deduce that  $K''$  is bounded by a bound dependent only on the disc about  $O$ , and so that the sets  $K'$  are uniformly bounded.

We may thus apply the Blaschke Selection Theorem, Theorem 1.5.1 to any sequence of sets  $(K_i)$  obtained by successively modifying  $K$  as above. We obtain a limiting figure  $K^*$  which can no longer be modified. However  $s(K_i) = s(K)$  is odd for each of these  $t$ -admissible sets  $K_i$ , and the sequence  $(K_i)$  converges to  $K^*$  in the Hausdorff metric. Hence by lemma 5.3.1, we deduce that if  $s(K^*) \neq s(K)$  then  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

We may therefore assume that  $s(K^*) = s(K)$ , and as  $K^*$  is immutable by the modifications of lemma 5.4.2, lemma 5.4.3 and lemma 5.4.4, it is a convex polygon, with at least  $s(K)$  edges, and with only lattice midpoint edges or multiple lattice point edges. As  $A(K^*) \geq A(K)$ , it suffices to prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3 for the set  $K^*$ .

Lemma 5.4.7 If  $K$  is a triangle, we may assume that all edges of  $K$  are multiple lattice point edges. If  $K$  is a quadrilateral, we may assume that at least two edges of  $K$  are multiple lattice point edges.

Proof. By lemma 5.4.5, we may assume that if  $K$  is a triangle, it has at least two multiple lattice point edges, and if  $K$  is a quadrilateral, it has a multiple lattice point edge. By lemma

5.4.6 we may further assume that  $K$  has only multiple lattice point edges and lattice midpoint edges.

We first suppose that  $K$  is a triangle, with a lattice midpoint edge  $E_1$  with midpoint  $L_1$ , and with  $E_2$  and  $E_3$  multiple lattice point edges. As in lemma 5.4.5, we replace  $E_1$  by an edge  $E_1(\psi)$  through  $L_1$ , at angle  $\psi$  to  $E$ , where  $\psi$  is oriented so that edge  $E_2$  is shortened and  $E_3$  lengthened when  $E_1$  is replaced by  $E_1(\psi)$ . As argued in the proof of lemma 5.4.5, we may increase  $\psi$  until  $E_1(\psi)$  is a multiple lattice point edge of the modified set  $K(\psi)$ . The set  $K(\psi)$  then has three multiple lattice point edges as required, unless the endpoint of  $E_1(\psi)$  on  $E_2$  is one of only two lattice points that were originally in the relative interior of  $E_2$ .

In this case, since lattice points are regularly placed along lattice lines, the remaining single lattice point  $L_2$  on the relative interior of the new shortened edge  $E_2$  lies no further from  $E_1 \cap E_2$  than from  $E_2 \cap E_3$ . Hence the edge  $E_2$  can be modified to  $E_2(\psi)$ , in such a way that  $E_1$  is lengthened.

Again  $\psi$  can be increased until  $E_2(\psi)$  is a multiple lattice point edge, as in the proof of lemma 5.4.5. The edge  $E_1$  now contains at least 3 lattice points in its relative interior, since the lattice point endpoint of  $E_1(\psi)$  on  $E_2$  becomes a point in the relative interior of  $E_1$  under the modification of  $E_2(\psi)$ . The modified set  $K(\psi)$  then has 3 multiple lattice point edges as required, unless the endpoint of  $E_2(\psi)$  on  $E_3$  is one of only two lattice points on  $E_3$  before  $E_2$  was modified.

In this case, we modify  $E_3$  as above, lengthening  $E_2$  and shortening  $E_1$ . As  $E_1$  has at least 3 lattice points in its relative interior, in this case the resulting set  $K(\psi)$  has indeed

3 multiple lattice point edges. We have therefore proved the result if  $K$  is a triangle.

We secondly suppose that  $K$  is a quadrilateral. By lemma 5.4.5 we may suppose that  $K$  is not a parallelogram, and that any edge  $E$  of  $K$ , whose adjacent edges  $E_+$  and  $E_-$  meet in the halfplane bounded by  $E$  containing  $K$ , is a multiple lattice point edge. By lemma 5.4.5,  $K$  has at least one such edge. By lemma 5.4.6, the remaining edges of  $K$  may be assumed to be lattice midpoint edges. We claim that we may assume that  $K$  has a second edge with the above property.

To the contrary, we suppose that  $K$  has parallel edges  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ , where  $E_1$  is a multiple lattice point edge, and where  $E_2$  and  $E_4$  meet in the halfplane bounded by  $E_1$  containing  $K$ . We suppose that  $E_2$ ,  $E_3$  and  $E_4$  are lattice midpoint edges with midpoints  $L_2$ ,  $L_3$  and  $L_4$  respectively. We claim that there is a lattice point in the interior of  $K$  on the line segment  $L_2L_4$ . For, otherwise we let  $L_0$  and  $L_1$  be two adjacent lattice points in the relative interior of  $E_1$ , and let  $S$  denote the strip with sides  $L_0L_4$  and  $L_1L_2$ . Since  $S$  contains two lattice points on its boundary and none in its interior on each of the equally spaced lattice lines  $E_1$ , and  $L_2L_4$ , the same can be said of the equally spaced line through  $E_3$ . However, as  $L_0$  and  $L_1$  lie in the relative interior of  $E_1$  and as  $L_2$  and  $L_4$  are boundary points of  $K$ , the edge  $E_3$  of  $K$  lies wholly within  $S$ . As  $E_3$  has midpoint  $L_3$ , a lattice point, we have a contradiction. There is therefore a lattice point  $X$  in the interior of  $K$  on the segment  $L_2L_4$ , as claimed.

We next claim that there is a chord of  $K$  through  $X$ , bisected by  $X$ , such that  $K$  has parallel supporting lines at its endpoints. We let  $Y$  be the point  $E_2 \cap E_4$ . The line  $XY$  lies between  $E_2$  and  $E_4$  in the pencil of lines through  $Y$ , and so meets  $E_1$  and  $E_3$  at points in their relative interiors. The chord  $XY \cap K$  has parallel supporting lines at its endpoints, along the edges  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ , and has midpoint  $X$  since the chord  $L_2L_4$  lies midway between  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ . Since area and the incidences of  $K$  with the integer lattice are unchanged under an integral translation of  $X$  to  $O$ , we may assume that  $X = O$ , and so that  $XY \cap K$  is an extremal chord of symmetry of  $K$ . By Corollary 5.3.1,  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

We may therefore make the assumption that  $K$  has no pair of parallel edges, and so that, by the modification of lemma 5.4.5,  $K$  has at least two multiple lattice point edges. We have therefore proven the lemma 5.4.7.

Proof of Theorem 5.4.1 By lemma 5.4.2,  $K$  may be assumed to be a polygon. By lemma 5.4.6 we may assume that each edge of  $K$  is a lattice midpoint edge or a multiple lattice point edge. By lemma 5.4.7 we may assume that if  $K$  is a triangle, all of its edges are multiple lattice point edges, while if it is a quadrilateral, at least two of its edges are multiple lattice point edges. Hence we have shown that we may assume the properties for  $K$  listed in Theorem 5.4.1.

## 5.5 An Analogue to the Minkowski-Vander Corput Theorem for a Class of Polygons.

Definition 5.5.1 A convex lattice 6-gon all of whose interior

lattice points are collinear we call a *flat lattice hexagon*.

In order to prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3, I would like to use the following result, which I have been unable to prove if  $c \geq 5$ .

Conjecture 5.5.2 Let  $K$  be a convex polygon in the plane which has  $c$  lattice points in its interior. Let  $Y$  be the convex lattice  $n$ -gon, with  $n \geq 6$ , which is the convex hull of all the lattice points on the boundary of  $K$  which are not vertices of  $K$ . We suppose that the edges of  $K$  either contain two vertices of  $Y$  in their relative interior, or have a vertex of  $Y$  as midpoint.

Then we have either

(a)  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$  or

(b)  $Y$  is a flat lattice hexagon, and  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1) + (2c)^{-1}$ .

The remainder of this section 5.5 is occupied in proving

Theorem 5.5.3 Conjecture 5.5.2 is true if  $c \leq 4$ .

We shall prove Theorem 5.5.3 by enumerating cases. Our plan is as follows. After a preliminary lemma (lemma 5.5.4) we show that

(a) there are just four types of convex lattice 7-gon having at most 4 interior lattice points (lemma 5.5.5)

(b) there are 24 types of non-flat convex lattice 6-gon having at most 4 interior lattice points (lemma 5.5.6).

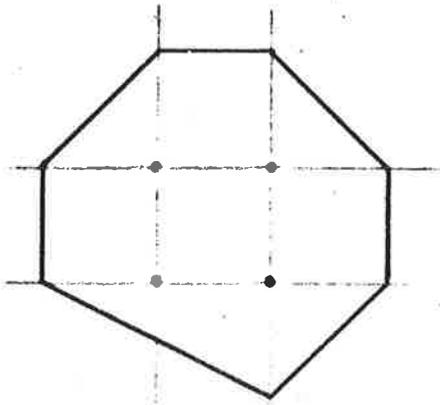
We then examine the convex polygons  $K$  of Theorem 5.5.3 investigating in turn the case when  $Y$  is a convex 8-gon (lemma 5.5.7), a convex

7-gon (lemma 5.5.8), a non-flat convex 6-gon (lemma 5.5.9) and a flat convex 6-gon (lemma 5.5.10). In the process we use results (a) and (b) above. The proof of Theorem 5.5.3 now follows easily.

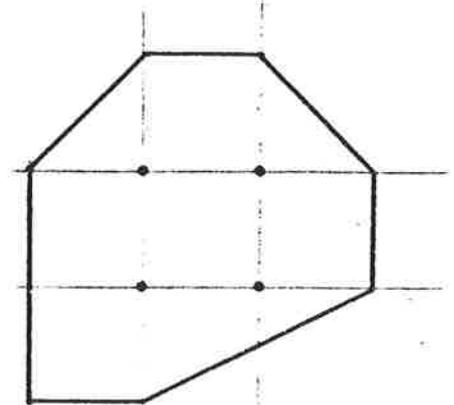
Lemma 5.5.4 Let  $O$  be a convex lattice polygon, and let  $I$  be the convex lattice polygon given by the convex hull of the set of interior points of  $O$  which belong to the integer lattice  $\Lambda_0$ . Let  $E$  be an edge of  $I$ , and let  $H_E$  be the open halfplane not containing  $I$  bounded by the line  $E$ . We let  $\ell$  be the lattice line parallel and adjacent to  $E$  in  $H_E$ . Then all vertices of  $O$  in  $H_E$  lie on  $\ell$ .

Proof. Let  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be two lattice points on  $E$  such that no lattice point lies on the segment of  $E$  between them. Let  $T_1$  be any triangle with vertices  $P_1, P_2$  and  $P_3$ , where  $P_3$  is a lattice point on  $\ell$ . By Pick's Theorem 1.4.1, as  $T_1$  contains no lattice points besides its vertices, the area of  $T_1$  is 0.5. Any triangle  $T_2$  with vertices  $P_1, P_2$  and  $P_4$ , a lattice point belonging to  $H_E$  but not  $\ell$ , has an area at least 1, since its height above  $E$  is at least double that of  $T_1$  as parallel lattice lines are spaced equally apart. By Pick's Theorem 1.4.1,  $T_2$  therefore contains at least one lattice point other than its vertices.

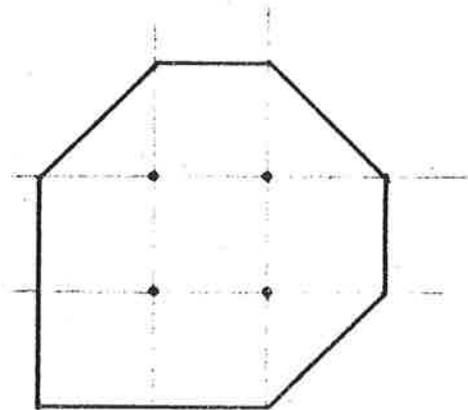
We now suppose that  $O$  has a vertex  $V$  in  $H_E$  but not on  $\ell$ . By the above, the triangle with vertices  $P_1, P_2$  and  $V$  contains at least one lattice point  $X$  besides these vertices. Since  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are adjacent on  $E$ ,  $X$  is not contained in  $I$ . However, since  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are interior points of  $O$ , so is  $X$ , in



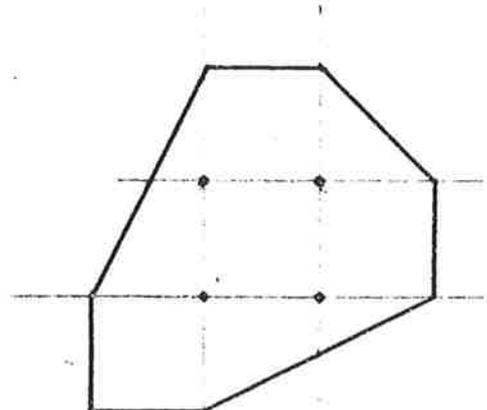
S<sub>1</sub>



S<sub>2</sub>



S<sub>3</sub>



S<sub>4</sub>

FIGURE 5.2

contradiction to the definition of I. Hence the lemma is proved.

Lemma 5.5.5 Let  $S$  be a convex lattice 7-gon which contains 4 lattice points in its interior. Then  $S$  is an integral unimodular transform of one of 4 lattice 7-gons  $S_1, S_2, S_3, S_4$  tabulated below and shown in Figure 5.2, opposite.

Proof. By lemma 5.3.2 (Vii) a convex lattice 7-gon contains just four lattice points in its interior only if these four lattice points form a parallelogram. Since area and the configurations of polygons and lattice points are invariant under an integral unimodular transformation, with no loss of generality we assume that this parallelogram is the square  $Q$  with vertices  $(0,0)$   $(1,0)$   $(0,1)$  and  $(1,1)$ . By lemma 5.5.4, the vertices of  $S$  lie on the boundary of the square  $U$  with vertex set  $A = \{(-1,-1), (-1,2), (2,2), (2,-1)\}$ . Since  $S$  has no more than two vertices on each of the edges  $y = -1$  and  $y = 2$  of  $U$ , the number  $a_1$  of vertices of  $S$  in the set  $A_1 = \{(-1,0), (-1,1), (2,0), (2,1)\}$  satisfies  $a_1 \geq 3$ . Similarly, the number  $a_2$  of vertices of  $S$  in  $A_2 = \{(0,2), (1,2), (0,-1), (1,-1)\}$ , that is the number of vertices of  $S$  not on the lines  $x = -1$  or  $x = 2$ , satisfies  $a_2 \geq 3$ .

Hence, by reflecting  $S$  in the lines  $x = \frac{1}{2}$  or  $y = \frac{1}{2}$  if necessary, we may assume that four of the vertices of  $S$  are  $(0,2)$   $(1,2)$   $(2,1)$  and  $(2,0)$ . As three of the vertices of  $U$  are collinear with two of these vertices of  $S$ , the only vertex of  $U$  which can be a vertex of  $S$  is  $(-1,-1)$ . Hence  $a_3$ , the number of vertices of  $S$  in  $A$  is at most one. We now list the four 7-gons  $S_1 S_2 S_3 S_4$ , and their parameters.

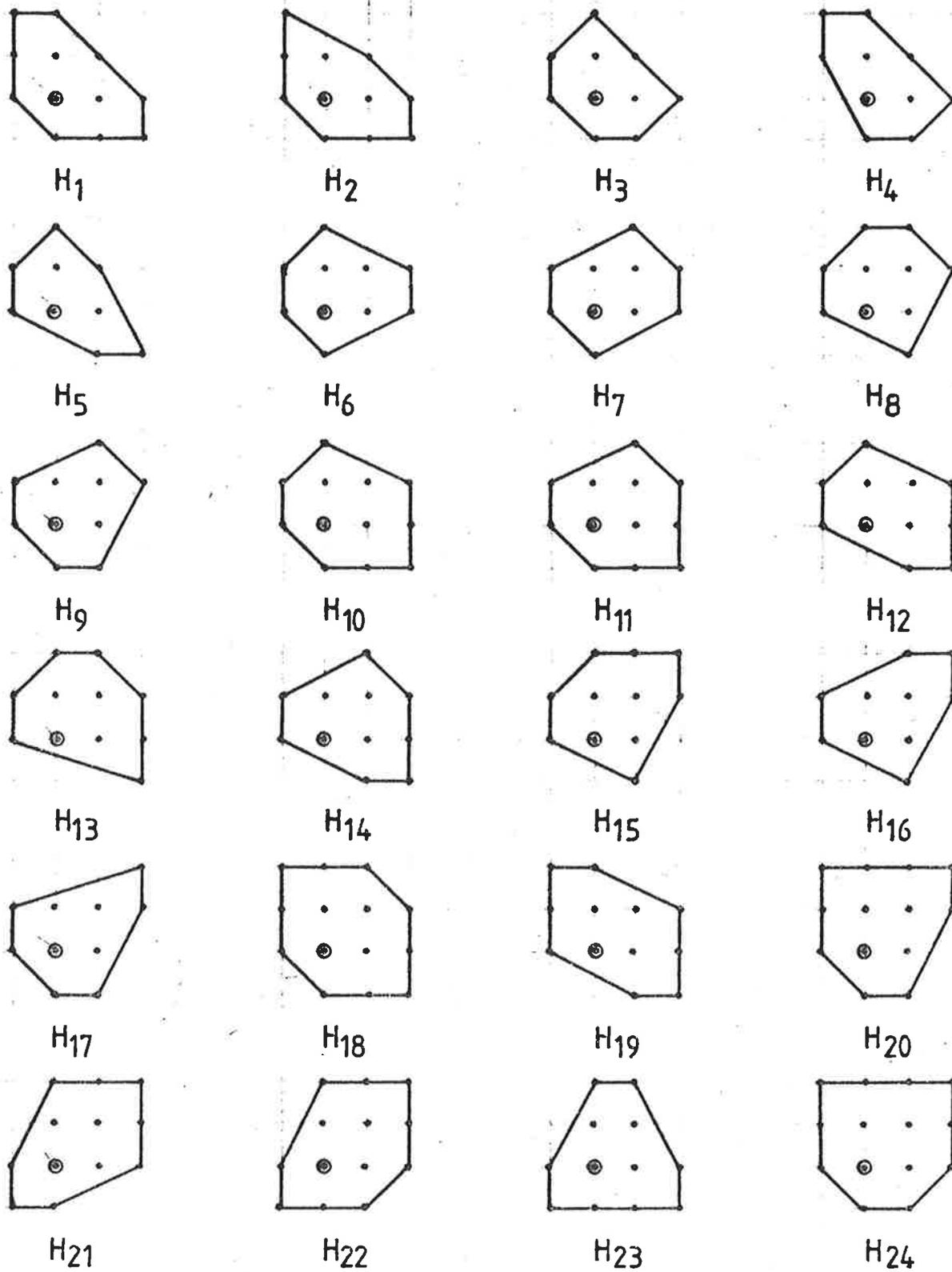


FIGURE 5.3

---

Parameters	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	Representative 7-gon, and vertex set
4	3	0		$S_1 \quad A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \{(0,-1)\}$
3	3	1		$S_2 \quad A_1 \cup \{(-1,0)\} \cup A_2 \cup \{(1,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,-1)\}$
3	3	1		$S_3 \quad A_1 \cup \{(-1,0)\} \cup A_2 \cup \{(0,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,-1)\}$
3	3	1		$S_4 \quad A_1 \cup \{(-1,1)\} \cup A_2 \cup \{(1,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,-1)\}$

---

We claim that, up to an integral unimodular transformation, these four 7-gons represent all convex lattice 7-gons which contain the vertices of  $Q$  as their sole interior points. Clearly, if  $a_3 = 0$ , the vertices of  $S$  are all but one element of  $A_1 \cup A_2$ , and so  $S$  can be transformed to the set  $S_1$  by a suitable rotation about  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  and/or reflection in  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ . If  $a_3 = 1$ ,  $S$  may have only one other vertex on each of the lines  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$ . Since the two 7-gons obtained by taking the choices  $(-1,1)$  and  $(0,-1)$ , and  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$  respectively are images of each other under a reflection in  $x = y$ , we have just three distinguishable choices of one vertex on each of  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$ . As these choices correspond to 7-gons  $S_2, S_3$  and  $S_4$ , we have verified our claim.

Lemma 5.5.6 Let  $H$  be a convex lattice 6-gon which is not a flat convex lattice hexagon (see definition 5.5.1). If  $H$  contains 3 lattice points in its interior, then  $H$  is an integral unimodular transform of one of five hexagons  $H_1, \dots, H_5$  tabulated below. If  $H$  contains 4 lattice points in its interior, then  $H$  is an integral unimodular transform of one of 19 hexagons  $H_6, \dots, H_{24}$  tabulated below. Hexagons  $H_1, \dots, H_{24}$  are shown in the figure 5.3, opposite.

Proof. If  $H$  contains three lattice points in its interior, they form a triangle, as this is the only configuration of three non-collinear points. Without loss of generality, if necessary employing an integral unimodular transformation, we may assume that these points are  $(0,0)$ ,  $(1,0)$  and  $(0,1)$ , and we let  $R$  be the triangle with these vertices. We first show just which lattice hexagons  $H$  contain these points as their only interior lattice points. By lemma 5.5.4, the vertices of  $H$  must lie on the triangle  $T$  with edges  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$  and  $x+y = 2$ . Further, since  $H$  has 6 vertices (no three collinear), no vertex of  $T$  is a vertex of  $H$ . Since integral unimodular transformations exist which interchange any pair of vertices of  $R$  while leaving the third vertex fixed, the three sides of  $T$  are equivalent. We can thus characterise the possible hexagons  $H$  by the numbers of lattice points of  $H$  belonging to each of the three sides of  $T$ , respectively.

---

Choice from edges of $T$			Representative Hexagon: Vertices
3	3	3	$H_1: (-1,2) (-1,0) (0,-1) (2,-1) (2,0) (0,2)$
3	3	2	$H_2: (-1,2) (-1,0) (0,-1) (2,-1) (2,0) (1,1)$
2	2	3	$H_3: (-1,1) (-1,0) (0,-1) (1,-1) (2,0) (0,2)$
2	2	3	$H_4: (-1,2) (-1,1) (0,-1) (1,-1) (2,0) (0,2)$
2	2	2	$H_5: (-1,1) (-1,0) (1,-1) (2,-1) (1,1) (0,2)$

---

It is easily confirmed that the five hexagons listed above exhaust all lattice hexagons containing  $T$ , up to integer unimodular transformation.

If  $H$  contains four lattice points in its interior, we first show that they form a quadrilateral  $Q$ . The only other possibilities are that they form a triangle  $T_1$  containing one lattice point on the relative interior of one side, or a triangle  $T_2$  containing one lattice point in its interior. By mapping with an integer unimodular transformation if necessary, we may assume with no loss of generality that  $T_1$  has vertices  $(0,0)$ ,  $(2,0)$  and  $(0,1)$  and that  $T_2$  has vertices  $(1,0)$ ,  $(0,1)$  and  $(-1,-1)$  respectively. By lemma 5.5.4, the vertices of  $H$  lie on the sides of the triangles  $S_1$  with vertices  $(-1,-1)$ ,  $(5,-1)$  and  $(-1,2)$  or  $S_2$  with vertices  $(2,0)$ ,  $(0,2)$  and  $(-2,-2)$  respectively. Now  $(-1,2)$  is the only lattice point on the boundary of  $S_1$  in the halfplane  $y > 1$ , and since  $(0,1)$  is an interior point of  $H$ ,  $(-1,2)$  must be a vertex of  $H$ . However  $(-1,2)$  is a vertex of the triangle  $S_1$ , and so as before, at most 4 further vertices of  $H$  can be chosen on the boundary of  $S_1$ , a clear contradiction. In the case of  $T_2$ ,  $S_2$  has only 3 lattice points on its boundary which are not vertices of  $S_2$ , and so no lattice hexagon  $H$  exists with all its vertices on the boundary of  $S_2$ . By these contradictions, we deduce that the four interior lattice points of  $H$  lie at the vertices of the quadrilateral  $Q$ .

From lemma 5.3.2(i), we deduce that  $Q$  has a pair of parallel sides, and since lattice points are regularly placed on parallel lattice lines,  $Q$  is a parallelogram. By mapping with an integral unimodular transformation we may assume with no loss of generality that  $Q$  has vertices  $(0,0)$ ,  $(0,1)$ ,  $(1,0)$  and  $(1,1)$ .

By lemma 5.5.4, the vertices of  $H$  lie on the sides of the square  $U$ , with sides  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$ ,  $x = 2$  and  $y = 2$ . As no 3

vertices of  $H$  are collinear, no more than 2 vertices of  $H$  lie on any given side of  $U$ , and so at least one vertex of  $H$  lies on every side of  $U$ . Hence there are  $a_1$ ,  $2 \leq a_1 \leq 4$ , vertices of  $H$  belonging to the set  $A_1 = \{(-1,0),(-1,1),(2,0),(2,1)\}$  of lattice points of  $U$  not on  $y = -1$  or  $y = 2$ . Similarly there are  $a_2$ ,  $2 \leq a_2 \leq 4$ , vertices of  $H$  belonging to the set  $A_2 = \{(0,-1),(1,-1),(0,2),(1,2)\}$  of lattice points of  $U$  not on  $x = -1$  or  $x = 2$ . Since no three vertices of  $H$  are collinear, the number of vertices of  $H$  which are vertices of  $U$ ,  $a_3 \leq 2$ . We now list 19 hexagons, by their parameters, and their vertices.

Parameters	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	Representative Hexagon:	Vertex Set
4	2	0		$H_6: A_1 \cup \{(0,-1),(0,2)\}$	
4	2	0		$H_7: A_1 \cup \{(0,-1),(1,2)\}$	
3	3	0		$H_8: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup A_2 \sim \{(0,-1)\}$	
3	3	0		$H_9: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup A_2 \sim \{(0,2)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{10}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(0,2)\} \cup \{(2,-1)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{11}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(1,2)\} \cup \{(2,-1)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{12}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,2),(1,-1)\} \cup \{(2,-1)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{13}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,2),(1,2)\} \cup \{(2,-1)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{14}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(1,2),(1,-1)\} \cup \{(2,-1)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{15}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(1,-1),(0,2)\} \cup \{(2,2)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{16}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(1,-1),(1,2)\} \cup \{(2,2)\}$	
3	2	1		$H_{17}: A_1 \sim \{(2,0)\} \cup \{(1,-1),(0,-1)\} \cup \{(2,2)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{18}: \{(-1,0),(2,1)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(1,2)\} \cup \{(-1,2),(2,-1)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{19}: \{(-1,0),(2,1)\} \cup \{(0,2),(1,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,2),(2,-1)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{20}: \{(-1,0),(2,1)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(1,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,2),(2,2)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{21}: \{(-1,0),(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(0,2)\} \cup \{(2,2),(-1,-1)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{22}: \{(-1,0),(2,0)\} \cup \{(1,-1),(0,2)\} \cup \{(2,2),(-1,-1)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{23}: \{(-1,0),(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,2),(1,2)\} \cup \{(2,-1),(-1,-1)\}$	
2	2	2		$H_{24}: \{(-1,0),(2,0)\} \cup \{(0,-1),(1,-1)\} \cup \{(-1,2),(2,2)\}$	

We claim that, up to an integral unimodular transformation, these 19 hexagons represent all convex lattice hexagons which contain  $Q$ . Both  $Q$  and  $U$  are invariant figures under the symmetry group of  $Q$  a subgroup of the integral unimodular transformations of the plane. We thus have lost no generality by assuming that  $a_1 \geq a_2$ , that  $(2,0)$  is not a vertex of  $H$  when  $a_1 = 3$  or that  $(-1,0)$  is a vertex of  $H$  when  $a_1 = 2$ .

It is clear that hexagons  $H_6, \dots, H_9$  represent all the hexagons for which  $a_3 = 0$ . With  $a_3 = 1$ , and so with the vertices of  $A_1$  chosen as indicated above, there are only two vertices of  $U$ ,  $(2,-1)$  and  $(2,2)$ , which can be the vertex of  $H$ . The hexagons  $H_{10}, \dots, H_{14}$  represent all the possible choices for the remaining vertices from  $A_2$ , if  $(2,-1)$  is a vertex of  $H$ . Similarly if  $(2,2)$  is a vertex of  $H$ ,  $(1,-1)$  must be then a vertex of  $H$  in order that the vertices of  $Q$  are interior to  $H$ , and so there are exactly three hexagons,  $H_{15}, H_{16}$  and  $H_{17}$  with this vertex. Finally, if  $a_3 = 2$ , it is impossible for the four vertices of  $H$  in  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  to lie on just two sides of  $U$ , for there is only one vertex of  $U$  not on these two sides. Hence we may assume that  $(-1,0)$  is the only vertex of  $H$  on the edge of  $U$  given by  $x = -1$ , which belongs to  $A_1$ . If  $H$  has two vertices collinear with an edge of  $Q$ , we may assume without loss of generality, applying a symmetry of  $Q$  if necessary, that those vertices are  $(-1,0)$  and  $(2,0)$ . There are four choices for the vertices of  $H$  on  $A_2$ , since with the vertices so far specified,  $H$  is symmetric in  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ . These four choices correspond to  $H_{21}, \dots, H_{24}$ . If  $H$  has no two vertices collinear with an edge of  $Q$ ,  $(2,1)$  is a vertex of  $H$  and the vertices of  $H$  which belong

to  $A_2$  may be chosen in just three ways, since with the vertices so far specified,  $H$  is invariant under a reflection in the point  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ . These choices correspond to hexagons  $H_{18}, \dots, H_{20}$ . The two vertices of  $U$  which are vertices of  $H$  are fixed by our choice of the vertices taken from  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ , with the exception of  $H_{19}$ . In this case the vertices of  $H$  which are vertices of  $U$  can be chosen in two ways, but the two hexagons so attained are symmetric, under a rotation by  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  about  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ .

Thus the hexagons  $H_6, \dots, H_{24}$  represent all hexagons which contain just the four vertices of  $Q$  as interior lattice points.

Lemma 5.5.7 Let  $K$  be a convex polygon in the plane which has at most four lattice points in its interior and which contains on its boundary, not as vertices, the vertices of a convex lattice 8-gon  $O$ . If each edge of  $K$  contains either two vertices of  $O$  in its relative interior, or has a vertex of  $O$  as midpoint, then the area of  $K$  is at most 9.

Proof. Since  $K$  contains at most four lattice points in its interior, so does its subset  $O$ . However, by lemma 5.3.2(viii), a convex lattice 8-gon contains at least four lattice points in its interior, and contains four only if it is an integral unimodular transform of the symmetric 8-gon  $O_0$ . Therefore  $O$  is such a transform of  $O_0$ , and since area and the configurations of lattice points in the statement of the lemma are invariant under an integral unimodular transformation we assume without loss of generality that  $O$  is  $O_0$ , with interior points  $(0,0), (1,0), (0,1)$  and  $(1,1)$ .

We now show that not all four vertices of  $O_0$  in any of the halfplanes  $x \geq \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $y \geq \frac{1}{2}$  and  $y \leq \frac{1}{2}$  are midpoints of sides of  $K$ . By the symmetry of  $K$  it suffices to show this for the four vertices of  $O_0$  in the halfplane  $x \geq \frac{1}{2}$ . We therefore suppose to the contrary that the edges  $V_1V_2$ ,  $V_2V_3$ ,  $V_3V_4$  and  $V_4V_5$  of  $K$  have midpoints  $(1,2)$ ,  $(2,1)$ ,  $(2,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$  respectively. By the convexity of  $K$ , since  $K$  has the vertices of  $O_0$  on its boundary, the vertex  $V_1$  of  $K$  lies in the triangle  $T$  bounded by the lines  $y = 2$ ,  $y = x+2$  and  $y+x = 3$ . As  $V_2$  is the image of  $V_1$  under a halfturn about  $(1,2)$ , and  $V_3$  is the image of  $V_2$  under a halfturn about  $(2,1)$ , the point  $V_3$  therefore lies in the triangle  $T_3$  obtained by translating  $T$  by the vector  $(2,-2)$ . Similarly, since  $V_5$  lies in the triangle  $T_5$  bounded by  $y = -1$ ,  $y = x-2$  and  $y+x+1 = 0$  the point  $V_3$  lies in the triangle  $T'_3$  obtained by translating  $T_5$  by the vector  $(2,2)$ . However, the only common point of triangles  $T_3$  and  $T'_3$  is  $(2\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ . Hence  $V_3$  must be this point. But now  $V_1V_2$  and  $V_3$  are collinear, contradicting our assumption that  $(1,2)$ ,  $(2,1)$  are midpoints of distinct edges of  $K$ . Thus the vertices of  $O_0$  lying in any of the given halfplanes can not all be midpoints of edges of  $K$ .

We deduce that at least two edges of  $K$  contain two vertices of  $O_0$ . Since  $O_0$  has eight vertices, it follows that  $K$  is neither an 8-gon nor a 7-gon.

We now suppose that  $K$  has an edge  $E$  which has two vertices of  $O_0$  in its relative interior. By the symmetry of  $O_0$ , it suffices to consider two cases, according to whether  $E$  is parallel, or at  $45^\circ$ , to one of the coordinate axes.

We suppose first that  $E$  with endpoints  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  lies parallel to a coordinate axis.

Without any loss of generality, we suppose that  $E$  contains the vertices  $(0,2)$  and  $(1,2)$  of  $O_0$  in its relative interior. We claim that  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  must be  $(-1,2)$  and  $(2,2)$ . The point  $(-1,2)$  cannot be in the relative interior of  $E$ , for then by convexity  $(-1,1)$  is interior to  $K$ , contrary to the fact that vertices of  $O_0$  lie on the boundary of  $K$ . If  $(-1,2)$  is exterior to  $K$ , and so to  $E$ , the point  $V_1$  has coordinates  $(-1+\epsilon,2)$  where  $0 < \epsilon < 1$ . The edge of  $K$  with  $(-1,1)$  in its relative interior is therefore a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , and so  $K$  has the vertex  $(-1-\epsilon,0)$ . However, this contradicts the fact that  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  lie on the boundary of  $K$ . Hence  $V_1$  is  $(-1,2)$ . A precisely similar argument shows that  $V_2 = (2,2)$ ; hence the edges of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$  are multiple lattice point edges parallel to the other coordinate axis. By reapplying this argument to one of these edges, we deduce that  $K$  is a square of side length 3, and so  $A(K) = 9$ .

We may therefore assume that  $K$  has an edge  $E$  at  $45^\circ$  to the coordinate axis, which contains two vertices of  $O_0$  in its relative interior. By the symmetry of  $O_0$ , we choose  $E$  to pass through  $(1,2)$  and  $(2,1)$ , with no loss of generality. We now show that  $A(K) = 8$ .

We first show that  $K$  has two parallel edges which each contain two vertices of  $O_0$  in their relative interiors. This is so if both the edges of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$  contain two vertices of  $O_0$  in their relative interiors, for they are parallel to  $y = x$  by the only possible choice of four such vertices of  $O_0$ . Otherwise,

we may suppose that  $K$  has an edge  $E_1$  adjacent to  $E$  which has a vertex of  $O_0$  as its midpoint. Without loss of generality, since  $O_0$  is symmetric about  $y = x$ , we take this midpoint to be  $(2,0)$ . Thus  $E_1$  has an endpoint on the line  $x+y = 1$ , strictly between the point  $(2,-1)$  and the line  $y+2 = x$ . The next edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  adjacent to  $E_1$  is therefore also a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , with midpoint  $(1,-1)$ , and so has endpoint on the line  $x+y+1 = 0$ . Since the vertices  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  of  $O_0$  also lie on this line, the next edge  $E_3$  of  $K$  is a multiple lattice point edge parallel to  $E$ . Thus in this case too,  $K$  has two parallel edges at  $45^\circ$  to the axes, which contain two vertices of  $O_0$  in their relative interiors.

If all the vertices of  $K$  lie on edges of the above type,  $K$  is then a square of side length  $2\sqrt{2}$ , and so has area 8. We denote this square  $U$ . Without loss of generality, we suppose that  $K$  has parallel edges  $E$  and  $E'$  containing  $(1,2)$  and  $(2,1)$ , and  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  respectively in their relative interiors. Since the remaining four vertices of  $O_0$  lie midway between the line  $x+y = 1$  and  $E$  and  $E'$ , the triangular components of  $K \sim U$  and of  $U \sim K$  to either side of  $x+y = 1$  are congruent. Hence  $A(K) = A(U) = 8$ , and we have proved the lemma.

Lemma 5.5.8 Let  $K$  be a convex polygon in the plane which has at most four lattice points in its interior and which contains on the relative interior of its edges the vertices of a convex lattice 7-gon  $S$ . If all the edges of  $K$  contain either two vertices of  $S$  in their relative interior or have as midpoint such a vertex, then  $A(K) = 7\frac{1}{2}$ .

Proof. Since  $K$  contains at most four lattice points, so does its subset  $S$ . However, by lemma 5.3.2(vii) a convex lattice 7-gon contains at least four lattice points in its interior, and so  $S$  contains exactly four interior lattice points. By lemma 5.5.5,  $S$  is therefore an integral unimodular transform of one of the sets  $S_1, S_2, S_3$  or  $S_4$  specified there. Since area and the incidences of  $K$  with  $S$  and the lattice are preserved under an integral unimodular transform, we assume that  $S$  is  $S_i$  for some  $i=1, \dots, 4$ , with no loss of generality. We shall show that  $S$  must be  $S_4$ .

It is easy to show that  $S$  is not  $S_2$  or  $S_3$ . In each case, the point  $(-1, 0)$  is not interior to  $K$ ; the collinearity of  $(-1, 1)$ ,  $(-1, 0)$  and  $(-1, -1)$  now implies the existence of an edge  $E$  of  $K$  containing these three points. For  $S_3$  the same argument shows that  $K$  has an edge through  $(-1, -1)$ ,  $(0, -1)$  and  $(1, -1)$ . But now  $(-1, -1)$  is a vertex of  $K$ , and so does not belong to the set  $S$ , contrary to the supposition  $S = S_3$ . In the case of  $S_2$ , let  $E'$  be the edge of  $K$  adjacent to  $E$  and passing through  $(0, 2)$ . If  $(0, 2)$  is the midpoint of  $E'$ , the endpoint of  $E'$  not on  $E$  has coordinates  $(1, 2+\epsilon)$ ,  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$ , contradicting the fact that  $(1, 2)$  and  $(2, 1)$ , vertices of  $S_2$ , belong to the boundary of  $K$ . Hence  $E'$  contains the two lattice points  $(0, 2)$  and  $(1, 2)$ . By repeating this argument, we can show that the edge  $E''$  of  $K$  adjacent to  $E'$ , which passes through  $(2, 1)$  is also a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ . Now edges  $E$  and  $E''$  are parallel, and the remaining vertex  $(0, -1)$  of  $S_2$  is not midway between  $E$  and  $E''$ . We deduce that no fourth edge of  $K$ , either a lattice midpoint edge or multiple lattice point edge, can exist,

i.e. there is no such set  $K$ .

We now suppose that  $S$  is  $S_1$ , with vertices  $(1,-1)$   $(2,0)$   $(2,1)$   $(1,2)$   $(0,2)$   $(-1,1)$  and  $(-1,0)$ , so that the vertices of  $S_1$  are those of  $O_0$  other than  $(0,-1)$ . We claim that the vertices  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$  are both in the relative interior of a common edge of  $K$ . To the contrary, we suppose that there is a vertex  $V_1$  of  $K$ , on the boundary of  $K$  between  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$ . Unless  $V_1$  lies on the line  $x = -1$ , it is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$  centred at  $(-1,0)$ . By convexity, the other endpoint of this edge is contained in the closed triangle bounded by the lines  $x = -1$ ,  $y = x+2$  and  $x+2y+1 = 0$ . Hence  $V_1$  either lies on the line  $x = -1$  or in the closed triangle bounded by the lines  $x = -1$ ,  $y = x$  and  $x+2y+1 = 0$ . Similarly  $V_1$  either lies on the line  $y+2 = x$ , or  $V_1$  is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge centred at  $(1,-1)$ , and so belongs to the closed triangle bounded by the lines  $x = 0$ ,  $x+2y+1 = 0$  and  $y+2 = x$ . Since the only intersection of these two loci for  $V_1$  is the point  $(-1,-3)$ , we deduce that  $V_1 = (-1,-3)$ . However, since  $(1,1)$  is an interior point of  $K$ , the midpoint of  $V_1$  and  $(1,1)$ , namely  $(0,-1)$  is interior to  $K$ ; this contradicts our assumption that the only lattice points in the interior of  $K$  are the four interior to  $S_1$ . Hence the vertices  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$  lie in the relative interior of a common edge of  $K$ . We label this edge of  $K$   $V_2V_3$ , with  $V_2$  closer to  $(-1,0)$  than  $(1,-1)$ .

Either  $V_3$  lies on the line  $x = 2$ , or is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge  $V_3V'_3$  of  $K$  centred at  $(2,0)$ . Now the position of  $V_3$  implies that the  $y$ -coordinate of  $V'_3$  is greater

than 1; this precludes the point  $(2,1)$  from being a boundary point of  $K$ , as assumed. Hence  $V_3$  lies on  $x = 2$ , and so is the point  $(2, -1\frac{1}{2})$ . As  $(2,0)$  and  $(2,1)$  are vertices of  $S_1$ , they are boundary points of  $K$ , and so lie on a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$  along  $x = 2$  which is of course parallel to the  $y$ -axis. By the argument given in the 5th argument of the proof of lemma 5.5.7, which is applicable since the vertices of  $S_1$  are all vertices of  $O_0$ ,  $K$  has also multiple lattice point edges along the lines  $y = 2$  and  $x = -1$ . But now vertex  $V_2$  of  $K$  is the point  $(-1,0)$ , contrary to our assumption that  $(-1,0)$  is a vertex of  $S_1$ , and so not a vertex of  $K$ . Hence  $S$  is not  $S_1$ .

Finally, we suppose that  $S$  is  $S_4$ , with vertices  $(2,0)$   $(2,1)$   $(1,2)$   $(0,2)$   $(-1,0)$   $(-1,-1)$  and  $(0,-1)$ . Note that  $S_4$  is symmetric about the line  $y = x$ . We first claim that the vertices  $(0,-1)$  and  $(2,0)$  are both in the relative interior of a common edge of  $K$ . To the contrary, we suppose that there is a vertex  $V_1$  of  $K$ , on the boundary of  $K$  between  $(0,-1)$  and  $(2,0)$ . Either  $V_1$  lies on the line  $y = -1$ , or is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge  $V_1V_2$  of  $K$  centred at  $(0,-1)$ . By convexity, the endpoint of such a lattice midpoint edge,  $V_2$  lies in the closed triangle bounded by lines  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$  and  $2y+2 = x$ . Therefore  $V_1$  either lies on  $y = -1$ , or in the closed triangle bounded by lines  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$  and  $2y+2 = x$ . Similarly, either  $V_1$  lies on the line  $x = 2$ , or is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge  $V_1V_3$  of  $K$  centred at  $(2,0)$ . The other endpoint of this edge of  $K$ ,  $V_3$ , lies in the closed triangle bounded by the lines  $x = 2$ ,  $x+y = 3$  and  $2y+2 = x$ , and so has  $x$ -coordinate no greater than  $2\frac{2}{3}$ . Hence  $V_1$  either lies on  $x = 2$ , or has

x-coordinate no less than  $1\frac{1}{3}$ . We deduce that  $V_1$  is the only point of intersection of these two loci for  $V_1$ , namely  $(2,-1)$ . However, then  $(1,-1)$  must also belong to the relative interior of the multiple lattice point edge of  $K$  through  $V_1$  and  $(-1,-1)$ . Therefore the 7-gon  $S$  composed of all the lattice points of the boundary of  $K$  other than vertices, is not  $S_4$  but is  $S_2$ , and we have a contradiction. It follows that the vertices  $(0,-1)$  and  $(2,0)$  are both in the relative interior of a common edge  $E_1$  of  $K$ , along the line  $2y+2 = x$ . By the symmetry of  $S_4$ , we deduce that the vertices  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,2)$  are both in the relative interior of a common edge  $E_2$  of  $K$ , along the line  $y = 2x+2$ . Since the vertex  $(-1,-1)$  of  $S_4$  is the only vertex of  $S_4$  between the lines  $2y+2 = x$  and  $y = 2x+2$  with  $x+y < -1$ , we deduce that  $(-1,-1)$  is the midpoint of an edge of  $K$  along the line  $x+y = -2$ .

We now claim that the vertices  $(1,2)$  and  $(2,1)$  of  $S_4$  are both in the relative interior of a common edge of  $K$ . To the contrary, we suppose there is a vertex  $V$  of  $K$ , on the boundary of  $K$  between  $(1,2)$  and  $(2,1)$ .  $V$  cannot lie on the line  $x = 2$ , else the point  $(2,0)$  is a vertex of  $K$  not in the relative interior of edge  $E_1$ . Hence  $V$  is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$  centred at  $(2,1)$  and having its other endpoint on  $E_1$ . It follows that  $V$  lies on the reflection of  $E_1$  in the point  $(2,1)$ . Similarly,  $V$  lies on the reflection of  $E_2$  in the point  $(1,2)$ . This implies that  $V$  is the point  $(2,2)$ , contradicting the known fact that  $V$  cannot lie on  $x = 2$ . Hence  $(1,2)$  and  $(2,1)$  lie in the relative interior of a common edge.

Finally, it is trivially confirmed that  $K$  as specified above, has area  $7\frac{1}{2}$ . Thus the lemma is proved.

Lemma 5.5.9 Let  $K$  be a convex polygon which has  $c$  lattice points in its interior. We suppose that  $H$ , the convex hull of all lattice points on the boundary of  $K$  which are not vertices of  $K$ , is a convex lattice hexagon. We further suppose that  $H$  is not a flat lattice hexagon, and that all the edges of  $K$  contain either two vertices of  $H$  in their relative interior, or have as midpoint a vertex of  $H$ .

Then, if  $c \leq 4$ ,  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$ .

Proof. If  $c = 1$  or  $2$ , then  $H$  contains at most two lattice points in its interior. By lemma 5.3.2(iii),  $H$  contains at least one lattice point in its interior, and so  $H$  is a flat convex lattice hexagon. We may therefore assume that the number of lattice points in the interior of  $H$  is either  $c = 3$  or  $c = 4$ , and that not all these points are collinear.

By lemma 5.5.6, we may assume that  $H$  is one of the 24 hexagons there listed. We will show that there are only two sets  $K$  with  $c = 3$ , and no sets  $K$  with  $c = 4$  which have as set  $H$  any one of  $H_1, \dots, H_5$ . Subsequently, we will show that only two sets  $K$  have  $c = 4$  and any of  $H_6, \dots, H_{24}$  as their set  $H$ . These sets are triangles of area 8 and  $7\frac{1}{120}$  about  $H_{23}$  and  $H_{17}$  respectively.

$K$  contains  $H_1$

The hexagon  $H_1$  has three edges whose midpoints are lattice points. Consequently if  $c = 3$  and  $H = H_1$ ,  $K$  has three edges with three lattice points in their relative interior, and so  $K$  is the triangle  $T$  with vertices  $(-2,2)$ ,  $(2,2)$  and  $(2,-2)$ . Since  $A(T) = 8$ , we are within the bounds required for  $c = 3$ .

We now suppose that  $c = 4$  and  $H = H_1$ . For each edge  $E$  of  $H_1$ , the only points of  $K$  in the exterior halfplane bounded by  $E$  belong to the triangle with edges  $E$  and the extensions of the edges of  $H$  adjacent to  $E$ . Since  $(1,-1)$ ,  $(1,1)$  and  $(-1,1)$  are the only three lattice points, besides the three interior lattice points of  $H_1$ , in the union of  $H_1$  with these six triangles, the fourth interior lattice point of  $K$  is one of these points. The set  $H_1$  is invariant under the six integral unimodular transformations which map the triangle of interior points of  $H_1$  onto itself. Hence, without loss of generality, we may assume that  $(1,1)$  is an interior point of  $K$ , and that the other two points belong to the boundary of  $K$ . Hence  $K$  has edges along the lines  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$ . As  $(1,1)$  is an interior point of  $K$ , the remaining two vertices  $(0,2)$  and  $(2,0)$  of  $H_1$  are midpoints of two lattice midpoint edges of  $K$ . The common endpoint of these edges, a vertex of  $K$ , therefore lies on the reflections of  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$  in the points  $(0,2)$  and  $(2,0)$  respectively. Hence this common endpoint is  $(1,1)$ , but as we assumed  $(1,1)$  to be interior to  $K$ , this is a contradiction. Hence there is no such set  $K$ .

#### $K$ contains $H_2$

The hexagon  $H_2$  has two edges whose midpoint is a lattice point. Consequently, for a set  $K$  with  $c = 3$  and  $H = H_2$ , neither midpoint is interior to  $K$ , and so  $K$  has two edges along the lines  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$ , each of which contains 3 lattice points in its relative interior. We claim that the edge of  $K$  through  $(2,0)$  is also a multiple lattice point edge of

K. For, if this edge were a lattice midpoint edge, it would have an endpoint on the line  $y = 1$ , between  $(1,1)$  and  $(2,1)$ , contrary to the fact that  $(-1,2)$  and  $(1,1)$  are boundary points of the convex set  $K$ . Hence  $K$  is the triangle  $T$  bounded by the lines  $x = -1$ ,  $y = -1$  and  $x+y = 2$ . However, since for this triangle  $H = H_1$ , we obtain a contradiction.

We show that no  $K$  exists with  $c = 4$  and  $H = H_2$ . We suppose that  $K$  is such a set. Since  $H_2$  has two edges whose midpoint is a lattice point, the set  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along at least one of the lines  $x = -1$  and  $y = -1$ . If  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $y = -1$ , we can apply the argument given for  $c = 3$ , to deduce that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x+y = 2$ . If  $K$  has also a multiple lattice point edge along  $x = -1$ , we deduce that  $K = T$  and obtain the contradiction  $H = H_1$  as above. We may therefore assume that  $(-1,2)$  is the midpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , one endpoint of which lies on  $x+y = 2$ . The other endpoint  $P$  of this edge therefore lies on the line  $x+y = 0$ , between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-3,3)$ . The point  $P$  is also the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , centred at  $(-1,0)$ , whose other endpoint lies on the line  $y = -1$ . Hence  $P$  lies on the line  $y = 1$ , and so  $P$  is  $(-1,1)$ . This contradicts our assumption that the edge of  $K$  through  $(-1,2)$  is a lattice midpoint edge.

We may therefore assume that  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $y = -1$ , and so that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ . We claim that the edge of  $K$  through  $(1,1)$  is a multiple lattice point edge of

K. For otherwise, it is a lattice midpoint edge and, as one endpoint lies on the line  $x = -1$  between  $(-1,2)$  and  $(-1,3)$ , it has an endpoint on the line  $x = 3$  between  $(3,0)$  and  $(3,-1)$ . However, as  $(2,0)$  is a vertex of  $H_2$  and so a boundary point of  $K$ , this endpoint must be  $(3,-1)$ , which contradicts our assumption that the edge through  $(1,1)$  is not a multiple lattice point edge, and proves our claim. Since  $K$  has multiple lattice point edges on the lines  $x = -1$  and  $x+y = 2$ , the point  $(0,2)$  belongs to the relative interior of an edge of  $K$ . Since  $(0,2)$  is not a point of  $H_2$ , we have contradicted the assumption  $H = H_2$ . Hence no set  $K$  exists with  $c = 4$  and  $H = H_2$ .

K contains  $H_3$  or  $H_4$

The hexagons  $H_3$  and  $H_4$  each have an edge between  $(0,2)$  and  $(2,0)$  which contains  $(1,1)$  as midpoint. Consequently, a set  $K$  with  $c = 3$  and  $H = H_3$  or  $H = H_4$  has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  along the line  $x+y = 2$ . We shall next show that no such  $K$  exists.

We claim that the edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  through  $(1,-1)$  is a multiple lattice point edge. For, if  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge, its endpoint  $V$  not on  $E_1$  lies on the line  $x+y = -2$ . By the convexity of  $K$  and the fact that vertices of  $H$  are boundary points of  $K$ , the vertex of  $K$  given by  $E_1 \cap E_2$  lies strictly between the lattice points  $(2,0)$  and  $(3,-1)$ . Therefore  $V$  lies strictly between the lattice points  $(0,-2)$  and  $(-1,-1)$ . The vertices  $(1,-1)$  and  $(-1,1)$  of  $H$  are boundary points of  $K$ , and so the triangle  $T$  with vertices  $V$ ,  $(-1,1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  is contained in  $K$ . From our knowledge of the position of  $V$ , we

can deduce that  $(0,-1)$  is an interior point of  $T$ , and so an interior point of  $K$ . However,  $(0,-1)$  is a vertex of  $H_3$  or  $H_4$ , and so belongs to the boundary of  $K$ . By this contradiction, we deduce that our claim is true.

Since  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  are both multiple lattice point edges of  $K$ , the point  $(2,-1)$  is a boundary point of  $K$  which is not a vertex of  $K$ . Since  $(2,-1)$  belongs to neither  $H_3$  nor  $H_4$ , we deduce that no such set  $K$  exists.

We now claim that a set  $K$  with  $c = 4$  and  $H = H_3$  or  $H = H_4$  also has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  along the line  $x+y = 2$ . Since the above argument applies equally well in this instance, this claim is all we need to show that no such  $K$  exists.

We now prove the claim. To the contrary, we suppose that  $V$  is the vertex of  $K$  which is the common endpoint of two distinct edges of  $K$  through  $(0,2)$  and  $(2,0)$  respectively. As both  $H_3$  and  $H_4$  have an edge along the line  $y = -1$ ,  $V$  lies in the halfplane  $y \leq 1$ , or on the line  $y = x-2$  according to whether the edge of  $K$  through  $(2,0)$  is a lattice midpoint edge or a multiple lattice point edge, necessarily through  $(1,-1)$ . As both  $H_3$  and  $H_4$  have an edge along the lines  $x = -1$  and  $x+y = 2$ ,  $V$  lies in the halfplanes  $x \leq 1$  and  $y \geq 1$  if  $K$  has a lattice midpoint edge through  $(0,2)$ . If the edge of  $K$  through  $(0,2)$  is a multiple lattice point edge, it must lie on either the lines  $y = 2$  or  $y = x+2$ , as  $H = H_3$  or  $H = H_4$  respectively. The only intersection points of these loci for  $V$  are the points  $(1,1)$  and  $(4,2)$ . As  $V$  is a vertex of  $K$ ,  $V$  is not  $(1,1)$ . If  $(4,2)$  is a vertex of  $K$ ,  $K$  contains the points  $(1,1)$  and  $(2,1)$  as interior points, as well as the three lattice points in the interior of  $H$ . Hence, if  $c = 4$ , we have obtained a contradiction. Hence

our claim is verified, and so no such set  $K$  exists.

$K$  contains  $H_5$

The hexagon  $H_5$  has the following easily verified property. For any edge  $E$  of  $H_5$ , the triangle formed in the exterior halfplane bounded by  $E$ , with edges  $E$  and the extensions of the two edges of  $H_5$  adjacent to  $E$ , contains no lattice point in its interior. Since a set  $K$  with  $H = H_5$  is contained in the union of  $H_5$  with these six triangles, and as no edge of  $H_5$  contains a lattice point in its relative interior, we deduce that if  $H = H_5$  then  $c = 3$ .

Let  $K$  have  $c = 3$  and  $H = H_5$ . We show that  $K$  is a triangle having area 6. We begin by showing that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge. To the contrary, we suppose that all the edges of  $K$  are lattice midpoint edges. We label the vertices of  $K$  anticlockwise,  $V_1, V_2, \dots, V_6$  with  $V_1$  between the boundary points  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-1,0)$  of  $K$ . By the convexity of  $K$ ,  $V_1$  lies in the triangle with vertices  $(-1,1)$ ,  $(-1,0)$  and  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{1}{3})$ . The vertex  $V_2$  of  $K$  therefore lies in the reflection of this triangle in  $(-1,0)$ , and so the vertex  $V_3$  of  $K$  lies in the further reflection of this triangle in  $(1,-1)$ . This locus for  $V_3$  has vertices  $(3,-1)$ ,  $(3,-2)$  and  $(2\frac{1}{3}, -1\frac{2}{3})$ . Since the line through the vertices of  $H$   $(1,1)$  and  $(2,-1)$ , with equation  $y = -2x+3$ , meets the locus for  $V_3$  in just the point  $(2\frac{1}{3}, -1\frac{2}{3})$ ,  $K$  must have a multiple lattice point edge along this line. As this is contrary to our choice of  $K$ , we deduce that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge.

We next show that  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ . To the contrary, we suppose that  $K$  has

such an edge  $E$ , containing  $(-1,0)$  and  $(-1,1)$  in its relative interior. The edge of  $K$  through  $(0,2)$  is not a lattice midpoint edge, for such an edge would have as endpoint a point on the line  $x = 1$  with  $y > 1$ . This would contradict the assumption that  $(1,1)$  is a boundary point of  $K$ . Hence  $K$  has a second multiple lattice point edge passing through  $(0,2)$  and  $(1,1)$ . We deduce that  $(-1,3)$  is a vertex of  $K$ , and so that  $(-1,2)$  is in the relative interior of  $E$ . This contradicts our choice of  $H$  as  $H_5$ . Hence  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ .

There are six integral unimodular transformations of the plane which map the triangle  $T$  with vertices  $(0,0)$ ,  $(1,0)$  and  $(0,1)$  onto itself. These correspond to the permutations of the vertices of  $T$ , and are generated as a group by a reflection in  $y = x$ , and  $\tau$ , given in matrix form by  $\tau(\underline{x}) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \underline{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ . It is easily seen that  $\tau$  cycles the vertices of  $T$  anticlockwise. Only the three powers of  $\tau$  map  $H_5$  onto itself, since a reflection in  $y = x$  maps  $H_5$  to an equivalent but different hexagon. The edge  $E$  of  $H_5$  with endpoints  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-1,0)$  is mapped successively to the edge  $\tau(E)$  with endpoints  $(1,-1)$  and  $(2,-1)$  and the edge  $\tau^2(E)$  with endpoints  $(1,1)$  and  $(0,2)$ . Similarly, the remaining three edges of  $H_5$  are also transformed to each other by powers of  $\tau$ .

Since  $K$  can have no multiple lattice point edge which contains the edge  $E$  of  $H_5$  above, by applying the symmetry  $\tau$  of  $H_5$ , we deduce that neither edge  $\tau(E)$  nor  $\tau^2(E)$  of  $H_5$  is contained in a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ .

We can thus assume that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge on any of the remaining edges of  $H_5$ , since they too are

permuted by  $\tau$ . Without loss of generality, we suppose that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  passing through  $(-1,1)$  and  $(0,2)$ . We let  $E_2$  denote the edge of  $K$  through  $(1,1)$ , and let  $V_1 = E_1 \cap E_2$ . If  $E_2$  is a multiple lattice point edge through  $(1,1)$  and  $(2,-1)$ , the vertex  $V_2$  of  $K$  between  $(2,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  lies on this edge, and so on the line  $2x+y = 3$ . Otherwise  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , and since one endpoint  $V_1$  of  $E_2$  lies on  $E_1$ , the other endpoint  $V_2'$  lies on the line  $y = x-2$ , between  $(2,0)$  and the line  $2x+y = 3$ . Since then  $V_2'$  lies on a lattice midpoint edge  $V_2'V_3'$  centred at  $(2,-1)$ , the vertex  $V_3'$  of  $K$  between  $(2,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  lies on the line  $y = x-4$ , between  $(2,-2)$  and the line  $2x+y = 3$ . Hence the vertex of  $K$  between  $(2,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  lies on either the line  $2x+y = 3$ , or the line  $y = x-4$ , between  $(2,-2)$  and  $2x+y = 3$ .

Similarly, if the edge of  $K$  through  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$  is a multiple lattice point edge, the vertex of  $K$  between  $(2,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  lies on the line  $x+2y+1 = 0$ . Otherwise, as above, we deduce that this vertex lies on the line segment of  $y = x-4$ , between  $(3,-1)$  and the line  $x+2y+1 = 0$ . However, the lines  $2x+y = 3$ ,  $x+2y+1 = 0$  and  $y+4 = x$  meet at the point  $(\frac{7}{3}, -\frac{5}{3})$ , which is an interior point of the segment from  $(2,-2)$  to  $(3,-1)$ . Therefore this point is a vertex of  $K$ , on a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$  through each of the pairs of points  $(1,1)$  and  $(2,-1)$ , and  $(-1,0)$  and  $(1,-1)$ .

Hence  $K$  is a triangle with these three multiple lattice point edges. It is readily calculated that this triangle has area 6, which is well within the bounds required by this lemma.

Each of the remaining hexagons  $H_6, \dots, H_{24}$  contains 4 interior lattice points. Therefore any set  $K$ , with  $H$  any of these hexagons, necessarily has  $c = 4$ . In order to complete the proof of lemma 5.5.9 we show that there are only two sets  $K$ , with  $c = 4$ , having any of these hexagons as its set  $H$ . In fact we shall show that these sets are a triangle of area 8 with  $H = H_{23}$ , and a triangle of area  $7\frac{1}{120}$ , with  $H = H_{17}$ .

$K$  contains  $H_{10}, H_{11}, H_{18}, H_{19}, H_{20}, H_{21}, H_{22}$  or  $H_{24}$

Fortunately, 8 of the hexagons  $H_6, \dots, H_{24}$  can easily be eliminated from consideration. Each of the 7 hexagons  $H_{10}, H_{11}, H_{18}, H_{20}, H_{21}, H_{22}$  and  $H_{24}$  has a pair of adjacent edges, each of which contains in its relative interior at least one lattice point. A set  $K$  with  $c = 4$  and  $H$  one of these sets must, by the convexity of  $K$ , have each of the edges in this pair as a multiple lattice point edge, for otherwise  $K$  would have more than 4 lattice points in its interior. However, the lattice point vertex of  $H$  common to this pair of adjacent edges of  $H$  is therefore not in the relative interior of an edge of  $K$ . This contradicts the defining property of  $H$ , and so no such set  $K$  exists.

The hexagon  $H_{19}$  has a pair of parallel edges, each containing at least one lattice point in its relative interior. Hence a set  $K$  with  $c = 4$  and  $H = H_{19}$  has two parallel multiple lattice point edges  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ . The remaining two vertices of  $H_{19}$  lie between  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ , and are not consecutive vertices of  $H_{19}$ . Thus  $K$  has a lattice midpoint edge through each. This is impossible, however, since these two vertices are not midway between  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ . Hence no such set  $K$  exists.

K has all lattice midpoint edges

In all but one case it is easy to show that no  $K$  exists having all lattice midpoint edges. Hexagons  $H_{12}, H_{13}, H_{14}, H_{15}$  and  $H_{23}$  each have an edge which contains a lattice point in its relative interior, which must, since  $c = 4$ , correspond to a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ . If all the vertices of  $H$  are midpoints of edges of  $K$ , by lemma 3.4.3(ii) the triangles whose vertices are the alternate vertices of  $H$  share a common centroid with  $K$ . As the centroid of a triangle is one third the vector sum of its vertices, the sums of alternate vertices of  $H$  must be equal. However, these sums are not equal in the cases when  $H$  is  $H_6, H_7, H_8, H_{16}$  or  $H_{17}$ , as shown in the following table.

---

Hexagon:	The sums of alternate vertices are not equal
$H_6$ :	$(0,2)+(-1,0)+(2,0) = (1,2) \neq (1,1) = (-1,1) + (0,-1) + (2,1)$
$H_7$ :	$(-1,1)+(0,-1)+(2,1) = (1,1) \neq (2,2) = (-1,0) + (2,0) + (1,2)$
$H_8$ :	$(-1,1)+(1,-1)+(1,2) = (1,2) \neq (1,3) = (-1,0) + (2,1) + (0,2)$
$H_{16}$ :	$(-1,1)+(1,-1)+(2,2) = (2,2) \neq (2,3) = (-1,0) + (2,1) + (1,2)$
$H_{17}$ :	$(-1,1)+(0,-1)+(2,1) = (1,1) \neq (2,1) = (-1,0) + (1,-1) + (2,2)$

---

The set  $H_9$  is the only set  $H$  we have not precluded from being the set  $H$  for a set  $K$  all of whose edges are lattice midpoint edges. We next do so.

We suppose that  $K$  with  $H = H_9$  and  $c = 4$  is a hexagon with vertices  $V_1, \dots, V_6$  labelled anticlockwise. We suppose that all edges of  $K$  are lattice midpoint edges and that  $V_1$  lies between the boundary points  $(2,1)$  and  $(1,2)$  of  $K$ .

We show that no such  $K$  exists. From the convexity of  $K$ , the vertex of  $K$ ,  $V_3$  lies in the triangle  $T_3$  with vertices  $(-1,1)$ ,  $(-1,0)$  and  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ . The vertex  $V_2$  of  $K$  lies in the triangle  $T_2$  given by reflecting  $T_3$  in the point  $(-1,1)$ , since  $(-1,1)$  is the midpoint of the edge  $V_2V_3$  of  $K$ . Similarly,  $V_1$  lies in the triangle  $T_1$  given by reflecting  $T_2$  in the point  $(1,2)$ . As  $T_1$  has vertices  $(3,3)$ ,  $(3,2)$  and  $(\frac{7}{3}, \frac{8}{3})$ , the point  $(2,2)$  is contained in the triangle with vertices  $(1,2)$ ,  $(2,1)$  and  $V_1$ . We therefore have obtained a contradiction, since either  $(2,2)$  is a fifth interior lattice point of  $K$ , and  $c = 4$ , or  $(2,2)$  is a boundary point and not a vertex of  $K$  but is not on the boundary of  $H_9$ . Hence no such set  $K$  exists.

We may therefore assume throughout the remainder of the proof of this lemma that  $K$  has at least one edge which is a multiple lattice point edge.

$K$  contains  $H_6, H_{14}, H_{16}$  or  $H_{23}$

By a suitable rotation of  $H_6, H_{14}, H_{16}$  and  $H_{23}$  about the point  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ , (an integral unimodular transformation), we may assume that  $H$  has two vertices on the line  $x = -1$ , and the vertices  $(0,2)$ ,  $(2,1)$ ,  $(2,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$ .

Let  $K$  have  $c = 4$ , and  $H$  be one of the above sets, in this standard position. We claim that  $K$  has a vertex on its boundary between  $(2,0)$  and  $(2,1)$ . To the contrary, we suppose that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  along the line  $x = 2$ . Since lattice points are regularly spaced on lattice lines, an edge of  $K$  passing through  $(0,2)$  and a lattice point on the line  $x = -1$  also has in its relative interior a lattice point on the line  $x = 1$ . As  $H$  has no such point on its boundary, the

edge of  $K$  through  $(0,2)$  is not a multiple lattice point edge. Neither, however, can  $K$  have a lattice midpoint edge  $E_2$  through  $(0,2)$ , since as one endpoint of  $E_2$  lies on  $E_1$ , the other must lie on the line  $x = -2$ . This is contrary to the fact that the two vertices of  $H$  on the line  $x = -1$  are boundary points of  $K$ . Since no edge of either type can pass through  $(0,2)$ , we conclude that our claim is true.

Thus  $K$  has a vertex  $V_1$  between  $(2,0)$  and  $(2,1)$ .

By convexity  $V_1$  lies in the triangle  $T_1$  with vertices  $(2,0)$ ,  $(2,1)$  and  $(3, \frac{1}{2})$ . We next show that  $V_1 = (3, \frac{1}{2})$ .

To the contrary, we suppose that  $V_1$  is not  $(3, \frac{1}{2})$ . The point  $(3, \frac{1}{2})$  is the intersection of the edges of  $H$  along the lines  $2y+2 = x$  and  $2y+x = 4$ . Since  $V_1 \neq (3, \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $V_1$  is not on both these lines, and so is the endpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , centred either at  $(2,0)$  or  $(2,1)$ . Our standard position for  $H$  is a specification symmetric about the line  $y = \frac{1}{2}$ . We may therefore suppose with no loss of generality, reflecting  $K$  about  $y = \frac{1}{2}$  if necessary, that  $K$  has a lattice midpoint edge  $E_1$  centred at  $(2,1)$ , with endpoints  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ . The point  $V_2$  therefore lies in the triangle  $T_2$  with vertices  $(2,1)$ ,  $(2,2)$  and  $(1, 1\frac{1}{2})$ , but is not this last vertex nor is  $V_2$  on the line  $x = 2$ . Thus  $V_2$  is the endpoint of a further lattice midpoint edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  centred at  $(0,2)$ , for a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$  through  $(0,2)$  and a vertex of  $H$  on the line  $x = -1$  can meet  $T_2$  only at the point  $(2,2)$ . However, the other endpoint of  $E_2$ ,  $V_3$ , lies in the reflection of  $T_2$  about  $(0,2)$ , and so  $V_3$  is in the halfplane  $x < -1$ . This contradicts the fact that two vertices of  $H$  on  $x = -1$  are boundary points of  $K$ . Hence  $V_1$  is  $(3, \frac{1}{2})$ , and so  $K$  has two multiple lattice point edges

along the lines  $2y+2 = x$  and  $2y+x = 4$ .

Finally, we show that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ . In the case  $H = H_{23}$  this is trivially so by the convexity of  $K$ , as the edge of  $H_{23}$  along  $x = -1$  (in standard position) contains two lattice points in its interior. In the other three cases, we note that  $H$  has just two lattice points on the line  $x = -1$ . To the contrary then, we suppose that  $K$  has a vertex  $V_4$  in the halfplane  $x < -1$ . Both of the edges of  $K$  with endpoint  $V_4$  are lattice midpoint edges of  $K$  centred at the two vertices of  $H$  on  $x = -1$ , since these are the only vertices of  $H$  unaccounted for. As these vertices of  $H$  are unit distance apart, the other two endpoints  $V_2$  and  $V_3$  of the lattice midpoint edges with endpoint  $V_4$  are distance 2 apart. But this contradicts the fact that these vertices lie in the halfplane  $x < 0$  on the lines  $2y+2 = x$  and  $2y+x = 4$ . Hence  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge on  $x = -1$  also, and so  $K$  is a triangle with  $H = H_{23}$ , whose area is easily calculated to be 8. This area is within the bounds required by this lemma.

$K$  contains  $H_{12}, H_{13}$  or  $H_{15}$

Each of these sets  $H$  are distinguished by the fact that they have an edge which has a lattice point as midpoint. As  $c = 4$ , any set  $K$  with one of these sets as  $H$  must have a multiple lattice point edge along this edge of  $H$ . For each of  $H_{12}, H_{13}$  and  $H_{15}$  we shall show that no such set  $K$  exists.

We first suppose that  $K$  has  $H = H_{12}$ . As  $(2,1)$  and  $(2,-1)$  are adjacent vertices of  $H_{12}$ , whose midpoint is a lattice point, they are in the relative interior of a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  of  $K$ . The edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  passing through

$(0,2)$  cannot be a multiple lattice point edge, since then  $E_2$  lies along the line  $y = x+2$ , and the point  $(1,2)$  would then be a fifth interior lattice point of  $K$ . Hence  $E_2$  must be a lattice midpoint edge, whose vertices  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  are on  $E_1$  and the line  $x = -2$  respectively. However, as two vertices of  $H_{12}$  lie on the line  $x = -1$ , this contradicts the convexity of  $K$ . Hence there is no such set  $K$ .

We next suppose that  $K$  has  $H = H_{13}$ . Again  $(2,1)$  and  $(2,-1)$  are adjacent vertices of  $H_{13}$ , and so lie in the relative interior of a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  of  $K$ . The endpoint  $V_1$  of  $E_1$  in the halfplane  $y < 0$  lies between the points  $(2,-1)$  and  $(2,-2)$ , since  $(2,-1)$  is a vertex of  $H_{13}$ . The edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  passing through  $(-1,0)$  is not a multiple lattice point edge, since such an edge would pass through the vertex  $(-1,1)$  of  $H_{13}$ , be parallel to  $E_1$ , and so not contain  $V_1$ . Therefore  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge, and since  $V_1$  lies on the line  $x = 2$ , its other endpoint  $V_2$  lies on the segment of the line  $x = -4$ , between  $(-4,1)$  and  $(-4,2)$ . As this segment lies completely in the outer halfplane bounded by the line  $y = x+2$  through vertices  $(-1,1)$  and  $(0,2)$  of  $H_{13}$ , this again contradicts the convexity of  $K$ . Hence there is no such set  $K$ .

We now suppose that  $K$  has  $H = H_{15}$ . Again  $H_{15}$  has adjacent vertices  $(0,2)$  and  $(2,2)$ , whose midpoint is a lattice point.  $K$  therefore has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  through these two points, along the line  $y = 2$ . If the edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  through  $(-1,1)$  is a lattice midpoint edge, it has one endpoint on  $E_1$ , and so has its other endpoint  $V$  on the line  $y = 0$ . As  $(-1,0)$  is a vertex of  $H_{15}$  it is a boundary point of  $K$ , and so  $V$  is not  $(-1,0)$ . Since the point  $(1,-1)$  is a vertex of  $H_{15}$ ,

by the convexity of  $K$  we have a contradiction. Therefore  $E_2$  is a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ .

The edge  $E_3$  of  $K$  through  $(1,-1)$  is not a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ , for it would then pass through  $(2,1)$ , and  $K$  would then contain the additional two points  $(0,-1)$  and  $(0,-2)$  in its interior. Hence  $E_3$  is a lattice midpoint edge, whose endpoints lie on  $E_2$  ( $x = -1$ ) and the line  $x = 3$ , respectively. As  $K$  has two boundary points  $(2,1)$  and  $(2,2)$  on the line  $x = 2$ , this is contrary to the convexity of  $K$ . Hence again there is no such set  $K$ .

$K$  contains  $H = H_7$

The hexagon  $H_7$  is centrally symmetric about the point  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ . We let  $K$  have  $H = H_7$ .

We first show that  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ . To the contrary, we let  $E_1$  be such an edge. The edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  passing through  $(1,2)$  cannot be a multiple lattice point edge, for such a multiple edge would pass through the point  $(2,1)$ , and then the point  $(0,2)$  would be a fifth interior lattice point of  $K$ . Hence  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge, with endpoints  $V_1$  on  $E_1$  and  $V_2$  on the line  $x = 3$ . However, since  $(2,1)$  and  $(2,0)$  are two boundary points of  $K$  on the line  $x = 2$ , this is contrary to the convexity of  $K$ . Hence  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge on the line  $x = -1$ . By the central symmetry of  $H_7$ , we can symmetrically argue that  $K$  has no lattice point edge on the line  $x = 2$ .

We next show that  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $2y = x+3$ , passing through  $(-1,1)$  and  $(1,2)$ .

To the contrary we let  $E_1$  be such an edge. The edge  $E_2$  of  $K$  through  $(2,1)$  is not a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ , since by the above argument, there is no such edge along the line  $x = 2$ . Hence  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge, with endpoints  $V_1$  on  $E_1$  and  $V_2$  on the line  $2y = x-3$ . As  $(2,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  are two boundary points of  $K$  on the line  $2y = x-2$ , this contradicts the convexity of  $K$ . Hence no such edge  $E_1$  exists on the line  $2y = x+3$ , and by the symmetric argument,  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $2y = x-2$  either.

Finally, we show that  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x+y = 3$ . To the contrary, we again let  $E_1$  be such an edge, and let  $E_2$  be the edge of  $K$  through  $(-1,1)$ . Since  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ ,  $E_2$  is a lattice midpoint edge. The endpoints of  $E_2$  are  $V_1$  on  $E_1$  and  $V_2$  on the line  $x+y = -3$ . As the points  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  lie on the boundary of  $K$ , and on the line  $x+y = -1$ , this again contradicts the convexity of  $K$ . Symmetrically again, we conclude that  $K$  has also no multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x+y = -1$ .

By the above three arguments,  $K$  has no multiple lattice point edge. Since we have previously argued that  $K$ , with  $H = H_7$ , has such an edge, we have obtained a contradiction. We conclude that no set  $K$  exists.

$K$  contains  $H = H_8, H_9$  or  $H_{17}$

We note that  $H_8, H_9$  and  $H_{17}$  may be put in a standard form, in which they have five vertices in common. By reflecting  $H_8$  in the line  $y = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $H_{17}$  in the line  $x = y$ , we may

assume that  $H_8$ ,  $H_9$  and  $H_{17}$  share the following vertices;  $(1,2)$   $(-1,1)$   $(-1,0)$   $(0,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$ . The sixth vertex  $X$  of  $H$  lies on the line  $x = 2$ , and  $X$  is  $(2,0)$ ,  $(2,1)$  and  $(2,2)$  in the case of  $H_8$ ,  $H_9$  and  $H_{17}$  respectively. We assume that  $H$  is in this standard form.

We first show that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge through  $(-1,1)$  and  $(1,2)$ , along the line  $2y = x+3$ . To the contrary, we suppose that there is a vertex  $V_1$  of  $K$  between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(1,2)$ . By the convexity of  $K$  any vertex  $V_2$  of  $K$  lying on the boundary of  $K$  between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-1,0)$ , should there be such a vertex, lies in the triangle  $T_2$  with vertices  $(-1,1)$   $(-1,0)$  and  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ . If  $(-1,1)$  is the midpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$ , we conclude that  $V_1$  is in the triangle  $T_1$  with vertices  $(-1,1)$   $(-1,2)$  and  $(-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{4}{3})$ . Otherwise  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge along the line  $x = -1$ , and so  $V_1$  is on this line. However the point  $(0,2)$  is external to  $K$ , and  $(1,2)$  is a boundary point of  $K$ . Therefore, by the convexity of  $K$ ,  $V_1$  lies strictly below the point  $(-1,2)$ , and so is a point of  $T_1 \sim \{(-1,2)\}$ .

The edge of  $K$  through  $(1,2)$  is a lattice midpoint edge, since the lines through  $(1,2)$  and each of the three possible points  $X$  do not intersect  $T_1 \sim \{(-1,2)\}$ . Therefore  $K$  has a vertex  $V_3$  in the triangle  $T_3$  with vertices  $(3,3)$   $(3,2)$  and  $(\frac{7}{3}, \frac{8}{3})$ . Unless  $V_3$  is the point  $(3,2)$ , the point  $(2,2)$  is a strict convex combination of the points  $V_3$ ,  $(1,2)$  and  $(1,-1)$ , and so is a fifth interior point of  $K$ . If  $V_3$  is the point  $(3,2)$  then the point  $(2,1)$  is a strict convex combination of  $V_3$ ,  $(1,2)$  and  $(1,-1)$ . Therefore,  $K$  contains a fifth interior

lattice point, which contradicts  $c = 4$ . Hence we conclude that  $K$  has a multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$  along the line  $2y = x+3$ .

The endpoint  $V_3$  of  $E_1$ , which is a vertex of  $K$  between  $(1,2)$  and  $X$ , must lie in the closed segment of the line  $2y = x+3$  between  $(1,2)$  and  $(\frac{11}{5}, \frac{3}{5})$ . For, as the points  $(1,-1)$ ,  $(2,2)$  and  $(\frac{11}{5}, \frac{3}{5})$  are collinear on  $y+4 = 3x$ , the point  $(2,2)$  would otherwise be a fifth interior lattice point of  $K$ .

The other endpoint  $V_2$  of  $E_1$ , which is a vertex of  $K$  between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-1,0)$ , lies on the closed segment of the line  $2y = x+3$  between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ , since it must lie in  $T_2$ .

We next show that  $V_2$  is  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ . To the contrary, we suppose that  $V_2$  belongs to the open segment between  $(-1,1)$  and  $(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ . As  $V_2$  is not collinear with the vertices  $(-1,0)$  and  $(0,-1)$  of  $H$ , the edge of  $K$  through  $(-1,0)$  is a lattice midpoint edge, whose other endpoint is therefore a vertex of  $K$  on the open segment between  $(-1,-1)$  and  $(-\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{3})$ . No point of this segment lies on the line  $y = -1$  through the vertices  $(0,-1)$  and  $(1,-1)$  of  $H$ , and so  $K$  has a further lattice midpoint edge through  $(0,-1)$ . The other endpoint of this edge is therefore a vertex of  $K$  on the open segment of the line  $2y = x-3$  between  $(\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{4}{3})$  and  $(1,-1)$ . As the line  $2y = x-3$  does not pass through  $X$ ,  $K$  has a further lattice midpoint edge centred at  $(1,-1)$ . Therefore  $K$  has a vertex  $V$  on the open segment of the line  $2y = x-3$  between  $(1,-1)$  and  $(\frac{5}{3}, -\frac{2}{3})$ .

The only vertex of  $H$  unaccounted for by these edges of  $K$  is  $X$ . Hence  $X$  is the midpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$  with endpoints  $V$  and  $V_3$ , which lie on the parallel lines  $2y = x-3$  and  $2y = x+3$  respectively. Therefore  $X$  lies on the

line  $2y = x$ , and so  $X = (2,1)$ . However, as  $V$  belongs to the segment between  $(1,-1)$  and  $(\frac{5}{3}, -\frac{2}{3})$ ,  $V_3$  therefore belongs to the segment between  $(3,3)$  and  $(\frac{7}{3}, \frac{8}{3})$ . This is contrary to the fact, deduced above, that  $V_3$  belongs to the segment between  $(1,2)$  and  $(\frac{11}{5}, \frac{13}{5})$ , as  $\frac{11}{5} < \frac{7}{3}$ .

We deduce from this contradiction that  $V_2 = (-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ . Hence  $K$  has an edge  $E_2$  along the line  $x+y = -1$ , with endpoint  $V_2$ . We label the other endpoint of  $E_2$ ,  $V_1$ . As  $(1,2)$ ,  $X$  and  $(1,-1)$  are boundary points of  $K$ ,  $V_1$  belongs to the open segment of the line  $x+y = -1$  between  $(0,-1)$  and  $(1,-2)$ .

We now show that  $K$  has no lattice midpoint edge through  $(1,-1)$ . To the contrary we let  $E$  be such an edge. Since  $V_1$  is one endpoint of  $E$ , the other endpoint  $V$  of  $E$  lies on the open segment of the line  $x+y = 1$  between  $(1,0)$  and  $(2,-1)$ . As all the vertices of  $H$  besides  $X$  are accounted for on edges of  $K$ ,  $X$  is the midpoint of a lattice midpoint edge of  $K$  between  $V$  and  $V_3$ . However, if  $X$  is either  $(2,0)$  or  $(2,1)$ , the lattice point  $(2,2)$  is then a fifth interior point of  $K$ . Also, since  $V_3$  is at most distance 1 from  $(2,2)$  (if  $V_3 = (1,2)$ ) and  $V$  is at least distance  $\sqrt{5}$  from  $(2,2)$  (if  $V = (1,0)$ ), we conclude that  $X$  is not the midpoint of  $VV_3$ . In either case then,  $X$  is not the midpoint of  $VV_3$ , and we have so obtained a contradiction. Hence  $K$  has an edge, which we label  $E_3$ , which is a multiple lattice point edge through  $(1,-1)$  and  $X$ .

If  $X$  is  $(2,0)$  or  $(2,1)$ , the point  $(2,2)$  is therefore a fifth interior lattice point of  $K$ . Hence if  $H = H_8$  or  $H = H_9$ , we conclude that no set  $K$  exists, with  $c = 4$ .

If  $X = (2,2)$ , the set  $K$  bounded by the three edges  $E_1E_2$  and  $E_3$  is a triangle, all of whose edges are multiple lattice point edges, with  $H = H_{17}$ . The area of this triangle is readily calculated to be  $7\frac{1}{120}$ . As this is within the bounds required by the lemma, the lemma is verified in this case.

To complete the proof of lemma 5.5.9, we only need comment that all 24 hexagons  $H_1, \dots, H_{24}$  have been dealt with, and that the four sets  $K$  found all have area within the bounds required by the lemma.

Lemma 5.5.10, Let  $K$  be a convex polygon which has  $c$  lattice points in its interior. We let  $H$  be the convex lattice polygon which is the convex hull of all the lattice points on the boundary of  $K$  which are not vertices of  $K$ . We suppose that  $H$  is a flat lattice hexagon, and that each edge of  $K$  contains either two vertices of  $H$  in its relative interior, or has a vertex of  $H$  as midpoint.

Then  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$

unless  $K$  is a triangle, all of whose interior lattice points are collinear, in which case

$$A(K) = 2(c+1) + \frac{1}{2c}.$$

Proof. Since  $H$  is a flat lattice hexagon, the interior lattice points of  $H$  are collinear on a line  $\ell$ . Therefore, by lemma 5.3.2(vi), the hexagon  $H$  has two vertices on  $\ell$ , and two vertices on each of the lattice lines adjacent, and parallel, to  $\ell$ . We denote these lines  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$  for convenience. Since  $A(K)$ ,

and the incidences of  $K$ ,  $H$  and the lattice are unaltered by the application of an integral unimodular transformation, we can with no loss of generality assume that  $\ell$  is the  $x$ -axis and that  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$  are the lines  $y = \pm 1$  respectively. Further, since a reflection of  $K$  about  $\ell$  is an integral unimodular transformation, we may assume that  $K$  has no more lattice points, either interior or boundary points, on  $\ell_+$  than  $\ell_-$ . We label the vertices of  $H$  anticlockwise, with  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  on  $\ell_+$ ,  $L_3$  and  $L_6$  on  $\ell$  and  $L_4, L_5$  on  $\ell_-$  respectively.

Edges along both  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$ .

We first suppose that  $K$  has an edge  $E_1$  along either  $\ell_+$  or  $\ell_-$ . As  $H$  has two vertices on each of these lines  $E_1$  is therefore a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$ . We now also suppose that  $K$  has a lattice midpoint edge  $E_2$  incident with  $E_1$ . Since the midpoint of  $E_2$  lies on  $\ell$ , the endpoints of  $E_2$  lie on  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$ . The next edge  $E_3$  of  $K$  therefore is a multiple lattice point edge of  $K$  through the two vertices of  $H$  not on  $E_1$  or  $\ell$ . Therefore  $E_1$  and  $E_3$  are edges of  $K$  along  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$ . The lattice quadrilateral  $L_1L_2L_4L_5$  meets  $\ell$  in a segment of length at least one, and so there is a lattice point  $P$  on this segment. As  $H$  is a hexagon,  $P$  is an interior point of  $H$ , and so  $K$ . Further, since  $E_1$  and  $E_3$  contain  $L_1L_2L_4$  and  $L_5$  in their relative interiors,  $P$  belongs to the convex hull of  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ . The lines  $\ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$  are therefore parallel lines of support of  $K$  at the endpoints of a chord  $C$  of  $K$  through  $P$  which has endpoints on  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ . By translating  $L$  to  $O$ , if necessary, by an integral translation along the  $x$ -axis, we

change neither the area of  $K$  nor the number of lattice points of  $K$ . Hence with no loss of generality  $L$  is the point  $O$ , and  $C$  is therefore an extremal chord of symmetry of  $K$ . By Corollary 5.2.1, we then deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$ .

Edge along  $\ell_-$

We may therefore assume also that  $K$  has two multiple lattice point edges  $E_2$  and  $E_3$  adjacent to  $E_1$ , which each contain in its relative interior two vertices of  $H$ . Since all six vertices of  $H$  belong to  $E_1E_2$  and  $E_3$ ,  $K$  is a triangle bounded by these edges. As we originally assumed that  $K$  has no more lattice points on  $\ell_+$  than  $\ell_-$ ,  $E_1$  must lie on  $\ell_-$ . The triangle  $K$  lies entirely in the halfplane  $y \leq 2$ , for otherwise edges  $E_2$  and  $E_3$ , which have lattice points in their relative interiors on both  $\ell$  and  $\ell_+$ , must contain lattice points on  $y = 2$  in their relative interiors. Thus the interior lattice points of  $K$  lie only on  $\ell$  and  $\ell_+$ , where we suppose there are  $n$  and  $m$  respectively; i.e.  $c = m+n$ . The area of the trapezium section of  $K$  in the halfplane  $y \leq 1$  is  $2(n+1)$ , and the area of the triangle of height  $h$  sectioned from  $K$  in the halfplane  $y \geq 1$  is  $\frac{1}{2}h(m+1)$ . Hence the area of  $K$  is given by

$$(1) \quad A(K) = 2(n+1) + \frac{1}{2}h(m+1) = 2(c+1) + \left(\frac{1}{2}h-1\right)m + \left(\frac{1}{2}h-m\right).$$

By our above remark,  $h \leq 1$ . If  $m \geq 1$ , then the final two terms in (1) are both negative, and so  $A(K) < 2(c+1)$  as required. If  $m = 0$ , then  $n = c$  and all the interior points of  $K$  are collinear on  $\ell$ ; by the similarity of  $K$  and  $T$  we deduce that  $h = \frac{1}{n}$ . In this case then,  $A(K) = 2(c+1) + \frac{1}{2c}$ , which is

the area required in the statement of the lemma for such a triangle.

No edge along either  $\ell_+$  or  $\ell_-$

By the above, we may suppose that  $K$  has no edge along either  $\ell_+$  or  $\ell_-$ . In the remainder of this proof we shall, on three occasions, compare the area of  $K$  to the area of a triangle  $T$ . We let  $T$  be the triangle, with three multiple lattice point edges  $D_1D_2$  and  $D_3$  through  $L_6$  and  $L_1, L_2$  and  $L_3$ , and  $L_4$  and  $L_5$  respectively. We denote the vertices of  $T$  by  $R_1, R_2$  and  $R_3$ , where  $R_i = D_j \cap D_k$ ,  $\{i, j, k\} = \{1, 2, 3\}$ .

$K$  has two incident multiple lattice point edges

We first suppose that  $K$  has two multiple lattice point edges  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  which meet at the vertex  $V_1$ . Since  $K$  has no edge along either  $\ell_+$  or  $\ell_-$ , the point  $V_1$  lies outside the strip  $|y| \leq 1$ . We claim that  $V_1$  lies in the halfplane  $y > 1$ .

To the contrary, we suppose that  $V_1$  lies in the halfplane  $y < -1$ , and that  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  pass through  $L_3, L_4$  and  $L_5, L_6$  respectively. Hence the edges  $E_3$  and  $E_4$  of  $K$  through  $L_1$  and  $L_6$  respectively are both lattice midpoint edges, which meet at vertex  $V_3$  of  $K$ . The distance between the other two vertices of  $K$ ,  $|V_2V_4|$  is twice  $|L_1L_2|$ , since triangles  $L_1V_3L_2$  and  $V_2V_3V_4$  are similar. As neither  $E_1$  nor  $E_2$  contain any lattice points in their relative interiors besides  $L_3, L_4$  and  $L_5, L_6$  respectively the length  $|L_3L_6|$  is at least twice  $|L_4L_5|$ . Since the segment  $V_2V_4$  is parallel to  $L_3L_6$ ,  $|V_2V_4| > |L_3L_6|$ . So

$$2|L_4L_5| \leq |L_3L_6| < |V_2V_4| = 2|L_1L_2|.$$

Therefore  $|L_4L_5| < |L_2L_1|$ . This is contrary to our choice of

orientation of  $K$  at the beginning of this proof. Hence our claim is verified.

Thus  $V_1$  lies in the halfplane  $y > 1$ . We relabel  $K$ , so that  $E_1$  passes through  $L_6, L_1$  and  $E_2$  through  $L_2, L_3$ . Since the remaining two edges of  $K$ ,  $E_3$  through  $L_4$  and  $E_4$  through  $L_5$ , are lattice midpoint edges, the vertices  $V_2 = E_2 \cap E_3$  and  $V_4 = E_4 \cap E_1$  of  $K$  have the same  $y$ -coordinate. As edges  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  of  $K$  lie on the same vertices of  $H$  as edges  $D_1$  and  $D_2$  of  $T$ , we deduce that the vertex  $R_3$  of  $T$  is  $V_1$ , and so that  $T$  contains no lattice point in the halfplane  $y > 1$  in the relative interior of edges  $D_1$  or  $D_2$ .

We claim that  $A(T) > A(K)$ . Let  $m_1$  be the line  $V_1V_3$ , and let  $m_2$  and  $m_4$  be lines parallel to  $m_1$  through  $V_2$  and  $V_4$  respectively. Let  $X_i = m_i \cap \ell_-$ , for  $i = 1, 2$  and  $4$ . The set  $K \sim T$  is made up of the disjoint triangles  $L_4V_3X_1$  and  $L_5V_3X_1$ .

These triangles are congruent to the triangles  $L_4V_2X_2$  and  $L_5V_4X_4$  respectively, as  $E_3$  and  $E_4$  are lattice midpoint edges. Since these triangles belong to disjoint components of  $T \sim K$ , our claim is verified.

Notice though, that the lattice points interior to  $T$  form a subset of the lattice points interior to  $K$ ; in fact if  $K$  has any interior points on the line  $y = -1$ , (i.e.  $|L_4L_5| \neq 1$ ), this is a proper subset. The convex hull of the lattice points on the relative interiors of the edges of  $T$  also forms a flat lattice hexagon. Hence by the previous case, when  $K$  has an edge along  $\ell_-$ ,  $A(T) < 2(c+1)$  unless  $K$  has no lattice points in its interior on  $\ell_-$ . We show this cannot occur.

For suppose  $K$  contains no interior lattice point on  $\ell_-$ . By our normalisation of  $K$ ,  $K$  has no interior lattice point on

$\ell_+$ , either. Hence  $|L_1L_2| = |L_4L_5| = 1$ . As  $E_3$  and  $E_4$  are lattice midpoint edges, the segment  $V_2V_4$  has length 2 and is parallel to  $\ell$ . Since edges  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  meet at  $V_1$ ,  $|V_2V_4| > |L_3L_6| > |L_1L_2| = 1$ . Therefore  $|L_3L_6|$  is an integer length strictly between 1 and 2, and so we have a contradiction. Thus no such set  $K$  exists.

Hence  $K$  has area within the given bounds.

$K$  has two nonincident multiple lattice point edges

We now suppose that  $K$  has two multiple lattice point edges  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ , which are not incident nor parallel to  $\ell$ . As a reflection of  $K$  (and  $H$ ) about the  $y$ -axis is an integral unimodular transformation, we may assume with no loss of generality that  $E_1$  passes through  $L_1$  and  $L_6$  and  $E_3$  passes through  $L_3$  and  $L_4$ . The other two edges of  $K$  are lattice midpoint edges  $E_2$  and  $E_4$  through  $L_2$  and  $L_5$  respectively. By our normalisation of  $K$ , the chord  $L_1L_2$  has length no greater than the length of  $L_4L_5$ .

Since  $V_1 = E_1 \cap E_2$  is the endpoint of lattice midpoint edge  $E_2$ , the chord  $c_1$  of  $K$ , parallel to  $\ell$  through  $V_2 = E_2 \cap E_3$ , has length  $|c_1| = 2|L_1L_2|$ . Similarly, the chord  $c_2$  of  $K$  parallel to  $\ell$  through  $V_4 = E_1 \cap E_4$ , has length  $|c_2| = 2|L_4L_5|$ . The chord  $L_3L_6$  of  $K$  lies between  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ , and so has length between  $|c_1|$  and  $|c_2|$ . As  $|L_1L_2| \leq |L_4L_5|$ , we deduce that  $|L_3L_6| \geq 2|L_1L_2|$ .

Since  $|L_3L_6| \geq 2|L_1L_2|$ , the triangle  $T$  has no lattice point in the relative interior of its edges between  $R_3$  and  $\ell_+$ . Hence as before, the convex hull of the lattice points on the

relative interiors of sides of  $T$  is a flat lattice hexagon. Again, the lattice points interior to  $T$  form a subset of the lattice points interior to  $K$ , which, if  $K$  has any interior points on the line  $y = -1$ , is a proper subset.

We claim that  $A(T) > A(K)$ . Let  $\ell_1\ell_2$  and  $\ell_4$  be lines parallel to  $\ell$  through vertices  $V_1, V_2$  and  $V_4$  of  $K$  respectively. Let  $X_i = D_2 \cap \ell_i$ , for  $i = \{1, 2, 4\}$ . As  $|c_1| \leq |c_2|$ , the edges  $E_1$  and  $E_3$  of  $K$  are either parallel or meet in the halfplane  $y > 0$ . Therefore the triangle  $L_4L_5V_3$ , a component of  $K \setminus T$ , has a congruent copy contained in the triangle  $R_2L_5V_4$ , a component of  $T \setminus K$ . The remaining components of  $K \setminus T$ , triangles  $L_2X_2V_2$  and  $L_3X_2V_2$ , are congruent to components  $L_2X_1V_1$  and  $L_3X_4X$ , of  $T \setminus K$ , where  $X = c_2 \cap E_3$ . As these three components of  $T \setminus K$  are disjoint, our claim is verified.

As above,  $A(T) < 2(c+1)$  unless  $K$  has no lattice points in its interior on  $\ell_-$ . We show that this only occurs when  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$ .

For suppose  $K$  contains no interior lattice point on  $\ell_-$ . By our normalisation of  $K$ ,  $|L_1L_2| = |L_4L_5| = 1$ . Therefore  $|c_1| = |c_2| = 2$ , and so  $|L_3L_6| = 2$ . Hence  $K$  has a single interior lattice point  $L$ , which is the midpoint of  $L_3$  and  $L_6$ . Further, as  $|c_1| = |c_2|$ , the edges  $E_1$  and  $E_3$  are parallel. By translating  $L$  to  $O$ , if necessary, the chord  $L_3L_6$  of  $K$  becomes an extremal chord of symmetry of  $K$ . By Corollary 5.2.1 we can therefore deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$ .

Hence  $K$  has area within the given bounds.

K has at least four lattice midpoint edges.

We have above covered every possibility in which K has two or more multiple lattice point edges. We first deal with the case in which K has all lattice midpoint edges. Then we shall show that the case of K having one multiple lattice point edge is easily explained as a degenerate case of the first.

We suppose that K has six lattice midpoint edges  $E_1, \dots, E_6$  with midpoints  $L_1, \dots, L_6$  respectively. We let  $V_1 = E_1 \cap E_2$  and label the vertices  $V_2, \dots, V_6$  counterclockwise. The chord  $V_2V_6$  is parallel to and twice the length of  $L_1L_2$ . Similarly,  $V_3V_5$  is parallel to and twice the length of  $L_4L_5$ . Thus the chord  $L_3L_6$  of K, midway between these chords has length

$$|L_3L_6| = |L_1L_2| + |L_4L_5|, \text{ and so } |L_3L_6| \geq 2|L_1L_2|. \text{ Hence } T$$

contains no lattice points in the relative interior of its edges adjacent to  $R_3$  besides  $L_1L_2L_3$  and  $L_6$ , and T contains no lattice points in its interior which are not interior to K.

We again claim that  $A(K) \leq A(T)$ . We denote the lines parallel to  $\ell$  through  $V_1, V_2$  and  $V_6$ , and  $V_3$  and  $V_5$  by  $\ell_1, \ell_2$  and  $\ell_3$  respectively. We let the lines parallel to  $V_1V_4$  through  $V_3, V_4$ , and  $V_5$  be  $m_1, m_2$  and  $m_3$  respectively. We denote by  $X_{ij}$ ,  $i, j = 1, 2, 3$  the 9 points on the boundary of T given by  $X_{ij} = D_i \cap \ell_j$  if  $i=1$  or  $2$  and  $X_{3j} = D_2 \cap m_j$ . The set  $K \sim T$  is the disjoint union of the triangles  $L_2V_2X_{22}, L_3V_2X_{22}, L_4V_4X_{32}, L_5V_4X_{32}, L_6V_6X_{12}, L_1V_6X_{12}$ . These triangles are in turn respectively congruent to  $L_1V_1X_{21}, L_3V_3X_{23}, L_4V_3X_{31}, L_5V_5X_{33}, L_6V_5X_{13}, L_1V_1X_{11}$ , as is easily confirmed as all corresponding edges are parallel and each pair of triangles has a pair of edges  $L$   $V$  equal, due to the six lattice midpoint edges of K. The second

set of six triangles has a disjoint union contained in  $T \sim K$ , and so we have proved our claim.

Unless  $K$  has no interior point on the line  $y = -1$ , we can deduce that  $A(T) < 2(c+1)$ , where  $c$  is the number of interior points of  $K$ . Since  $A(K) \leq A(T) < 2(c+1)$ , the result easily follows in this case.

We therefore assume that  $K$  has no interior point on the line  $y = -1$ . The chords  $L_1L_2$  and  $L_4L_5$  have length 1, by the normalisation of  $K$ . By the above,  $|V_2V_6| = |V_3V_5| = 2$ , and so  $|L_3L_6| = 2$ . The single lattice point  $L$  on  $L_3L_6$  is the only interior lattice point of  $K$ . Also, again, edges  $E_3$  and  $E_6$  of  $K$  are parallel, and so the chord  $L_3L_6$  is a chord of symmetry of  $K$  about  $L$ . By Corollary 5.2.1, we therefore deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$  in this case also.

Finally we must consider the case in which  $K$  has one multiple lattice point edge. Relabelling  $K$ , we may assume that  $V_1$  is the vertex of  $K$ , outside the strip  $|y| \leq 1$ , which is the endpoint of the multiple lattice point edge  $E_1$ . We label the vertices of  $K$ ,  $V_1, \dots, V_5$  cyclically, so that  $E_1$  has endpoints  $V_1$  and  $V_5$ . We let  $V_6$  be the point on  $E_1$  such that the chord  $V_6V_2$  is parallel to  $\ell$ . We claim that segments  $V_1V_6$  and  $V_6V_5$  have lattice point midpoints. For as  $V_6$  has the same  $y$ -coordinate as  $V_2$ , and  $V_3$  and  $V_5$  have the same  $y$ -coordinate, this follows from the facts that  $E_1$  has two lattice points in its relative interior and that both  $V_1V_2$  and  $V_2V_3$  are lattice midpoint edges. The 5-gon  $K$  is then a degenerate 6-gon; this degeneracy in no way affects the proof that  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$  above.

We therefore have shown that  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$  for all sets  $K$  other than a particular triangle. Hence lemma 5.5.10 is proved.

Corollary 5.5.11 Let  $K$  and  $H$  be sets as in the hypothesis of lemma 5.5.10, where  $K$  is a triangle, the interior lattice points of which are collinear, and  $A(K) = 2(c+1) + (2c)^{-1}$ . If the origin  $O$  is an interior point of  $K$ , then  $K$  has three chords of symmetry.

Proof. By lemma 5.5.10,  $K$  is a triangle, all of whose interior lattice points are collinear on a line  $\ell$ . Using the notation of the proof of this lemma, the boundary of  $K$  has two adjacent lattice points  $L_1, L_2$  on the line  $\ell_+$ , and two boundary lattice points  $L_3$  and  $L_6$  on  $\ell$ , between which lie all the interior lattice points of  $K$ , including  $O$ .  $K$  also has an edge  $E$  along  $\ell_-$ , whose endpoints are lattice points  $L_4$  and  $L_5$ . We choose  $L_1, \dots, L_6$  to circuit the boundary of  $K$  anticlockwise, and as in lemma 5.5.10, assume with no loss of generality that  $\ell, \ell_+$  and  $\ell_-$  are the lines  $y = 0$ , and  $y = \pm 1$  respectively.

Since lattice points are regularly placed along lattice lines, the lines  $L_1O$  and  $L_2O$  meet  $\ell_-$  at the lattice points  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  respectively. We claim that  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  belong to the relative interior of  $E$ . Since  $O$  is an interior point of  $K$  on  $\ell$ , the distance  $|L_3O|$  is at least one and so by the similarity of triangles  $L_2L_3O$  and  $L_2L_4M_2$ , the distance  $|L_4M_2|$  is at least two, with  $M_2$  to the right of  $L_4$  on  $\ell_-$ . Similarly, the distance  $|M_1L_5|$  is at least two, with  $M_1$  to the left of  $L_5$  along  $\ell_-$ . However, since  $|M_1M_2| = |L_1L_2| = 1$ , and since  $M_2$  is to the right of  $M_1$  along  $\ell_-$ , we deduce that both  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  belong to the relative interior of  $E$ .

Hence  $K$  has two chords  $L_1OM_1$  and  $L_2OM_2$  which are chords of symmetry, but not extremal chords of symmetry, for no other side of  $K$  can be parallel to  $\ell_-$ , and none of  $L_1L_2M_1M_2$  are vertices

of  $K$ . These two chords are not the only chords of symmetry of  $K$ , for if they were, by Theorem 5.1.1,  $A(K) \leq 2(c+1)$ . Since  $K$  is a triangle,  $K$  has at most three chords of symmetry, with endpoints given by the intersections of  $K$  with  $\bar{K}$ , the reflection of  $K$  in  $O$ .

Hence  $K$  has exactly three chords of symmetry, and the lemma is proved.

We now prove Theorem 5.5.3.

Proof of Theorem 5.5.3 Since  $K$  contains at most  $c \leq 4$  lattice points in its interior,  $Y$  contains at most  $c$  interior lattice points. Thus if  $c \leq 3$ ,  $Y$  has exactly six vertices, for at least six are specified in the statement of the theorem, and by lemma 5.3.2(vii), if  $Y$  has seven or more vertices, it must contain at least four lattice points in its interior. If  $Y$  is not a flat lattice hexagon, lemma 5.5.9 then gives the required bound on  $A(K)$ . If  $Y$  is a flat lattice hexagon, the bounds required are given by lemma 5.5.10.

If  $c = 4$ , the result is given by the previous paragraph, unless each of  $K$  and  $Y$  contain exactly four lattice points in its interior. If  $Y$  contains 4 lattice points in its interior, by lemma 5.3.2(viii),  $Y$  has at most eight edges. By lemmas 5.5.6, 5.5.5 and 5.3.2(viii) we can classify  $Y$  as a transform of one of 24 hexagons, 4 7-gons or  $O_0$  respectively, unless  $Y$  is a flat lattice hexagon. However lemmas 5.5.9, 5.5.8, 5.5.7 and 5.5.10 specifically give the bounds on  $A(K)$  required by the theorem in these cases respectively.

By exhaustion of cases then we have proved Theorem 5.5.3.

### 5.6 Completion of the Proof of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3

By Theorem 5.4.1, we know it is sufficient to prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3 for a set  $K$ , which is a polygon with at least  $s(K)$  edges each of which is a lattice midpoint edge or a multiple lattice point edge. If  $K$  is a 3-gon, we may assume that no edge of  $K$  is a lattice midpoint edge, while if  $K$  is a 4-gon,  $K$  has at most two lattice midpoint edges.

Hence the convex hull  $Y$  of the lattice points on the boundary of  $K$ , but not vertices of  $K$ , is a convex lattice polygon with at least five vertices. Indeed, by the above,  $Y$  is a 5-gon only if  $K$  is a 5-gon with all edges lattice midpoint edges. In this case, by lemma 5.3.4, we can deduce that  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$ .

We may therefore assume that  $Y$  is a convex lattice  $n$ -gon with  $n \geq 6$ . By Theorem 5.5.3,  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$  unless  $K$  is a triangle with area  $A(K) = 2(t+2) + (2(t+1))^{-1}$ . By Corollary 5.5.11,  $s(K) = 3$  in this case.

Hence if  $s(K) \geq 5$ ,  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2)$   
 while if  $s(K) = 3$ ,  $A(K) \leq 2(t+2) + (2(t+1))^{-1}$

We have thus completed the proof of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3.

We note that the fact that  $t \leq 3$  is used only to ensure that  $c \leq 4$ , in Theorem 5.5.3. Should Conjecture 5.5.2 ever be proved, we can replace the above application of 5.5.3 with 5.5.2, and deduce the bounds of Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.1.3 without restricting  $t$  to be at most 3.

The following simple corollary to Theorem 5.1.3 is a generalisation of Ehrhart's Theorem 1.2.1.

Theorem 5.6.1 Let  $K$  be a convex set in the plane with centre of gravity  $O$ , and with area  $A(K) > 8\frac{1}{6}\det(\Lambda)$ . Then  $K$  contains at least three points of the lattice  $\Lambda$  besides  $O$ .

Proof. By lemma 1.2.3,  $s(K) \geq 3$ . If  $K$  was 2-admissible, by Theorem 5.1.3, its area  $A(K) \leq [2(2+2) + (2(2+1))^{-1}]\det(\Lambda)$   
 $= 8\frac{1}{6}\det(\Lambda)$ .

Hence  $K$  is not 2-admissible, and so contains at least three points of  $\Lambda$  besides  $O$ . We note that the bound  $8\frac{1}{6}\det(\Lambda)$  is not the least possible bound for which this result is true, since the centre of gravity of the 2-admissible triangle of area  $8\frac{1}{6}\det(\Lambda)$  is not at  $O$ . I conjecture that the bound 8 is sufficient.

Certainly no lower bound will do, since the 2-admissible, 0-symmetric rectangle with vertices  $(\pm 2, \pm 1)$  has area 8.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [1] Besicovitch, A.S.: "Variants on a classical isoperimetric problem", *Quart. J. Math. Oxford* (2), 3 (1952), 42-49.
- [2] Cohn, H.: "On Finiteness Conditions for a Convex Body", *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 2 (1951), 544-546.
- [3] Corput, J.D. Van der: "Verallgemeinerung einer Mordellschen Beweismethode in der Geometrie der Zahlen", *Acta Arithmetica* 1 (1935), 62-66.
- [4] Croft, H.T.: "Cushions, cigars and diamonds: an area-perimeter problem for symmetric ovals", *Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc.*, 85 (1979) 1-16.
- [5] Eggleston, H.G.: *Convexity*, Cambridge Tract 47, 1963.
- [6] Ehrhart, E.: "Une Generalisation du theoreme de Minkowski", *C.R. Academie des Sciences Tom 240. 1.* (1955), 483-485.
- [7] Honsberger, R.: *Ingenuity in Mathematics*, New Mathematical Library 23, Yale (1970).
- [8] Lekkerkerker, C.G.: *Geometry of Numbers*, *Bibliotheca Mathematica VIII*, North Holland, (1969).
- [9] Minkowski, H.: *Geometrie der Zahlen* (Leipzig and Berlin) (1896).
- [10] Pick, G.: "Geometrisches zur Zahlenlehre", *Naturwiss. Z.* Lotos, Prag (1899), 311-319.
- [11] Scott, P.R.: "An Area-Perimeter Problem", *Amer. Math. Monthly* 81(8), (1974), 884-5.
- [12] Scott, P.R.: "On Minkowski's Theorem", *Maths. Magazine* 47(5), (1974), 277.
- [13] Scott, P.R.: "Convex Bodies and Lattice Points", *Maths. Magazine*, 48(2) (1975), 110-112.

- [14] Scott, P.R.: "On Convex Lattice Polygons", Bull. Australian Math. Soc., 15(3) (1976), 395-399.
- [15] Scott, P.R.: "On Three Sets with No Point in Common", Mathematika 25 (1978), 17-23.
- [16] Singmaster, D. and Soupouris, D.J.: "A constrained isoperimetric problem", Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc. (1978) 83, 73-82.
- [17] Yaglom, I.M. and Boltyanskii, V.G.: Convex Figures, Library of the Mathematical Circle, 4, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York, (1961).

INDEX TO BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [1] Besicovitch (1952) quoted from page 18
- [2] Cohn, H. (1951) quoted from page 16
- [3] Corput, V der (1935) quoted from page 7
- [4] Croft, H. (1979) quoted from pages 2, 20, 31
- [5] Eggleston, H.G. (1963) quoted from page 19
- [6] Ehrhart, E. (1955) quoted from pages 8, 9, 12
- [7] Honsberger, R. (1970) quoted from pages 17, 18
- [8] Lekkerkerker, C.G. (1969) quoted from pages 8, 18
- [9] Minkowski, H. (1896) quoted from page 7
- [10] Pick, G. (1899) quoted from page 17
- [11] Scott, P. (1974) quoted from page 31
- [12] Scott, P. (1974) quoted from page 15
- [13] Scott, P. (1975) quoted from page 14
- [14] Scott, P. (1976) quoted from page 17
- [15] Scott, P. (1978) quoted from page 13
- [16] Singmaster D. &  
Soupouris D.J. (1978) quoted from page 19
- [17] Yaglom, I.M. &  
Boltyanskii, V.G. (1961) quoted from pages 8, 18, 67